Aptify Web End User Training Manual

Version 5.5.5

Information in this document is subject to change without notice. Companies, names and data used in examples herein are fictitious unless otherwise noted. No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose, without the express written permission of Aptify.

Copyright © 2002-2017 Aptify.

Crystal Reports® is a trademark of SAP.

Microsoft® Windows®, Microsoft Excel®, and Microsoft SQL Server® are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

The material contained herein is Confidential and Proprietary to Aptify and protected by non-disclosure provisions in the Aptify Master License Agreements, Aptify Non-Disclosure Agreement, Aptify Partner Agreements, and/or other non-disclosure instruments between the recipient and Aptify. All elements of the material, including but not limited to the content, presentation, and storage and delivery methods are Confidential. In the event that any element of this material is found to not be confidential in a legal proceeding, all other elements will remain Confidential.



Table of Contents

Chapter 1—Introduction to Aptify

Objective	. 1.1
Introduction to End User Training	. 1.2
Log in to Aptify	. 1.3
Navigating Aptify	. 1.4
Aptify Terminology & Hierarchy	. 1.5

Chapter 2—Aptify Basics

Aptify Display	2.2
Applications and Favorites	2.3
Settings Button	2.7
Managing Settings	2.8
Quick & Global Search	2.10
Most Recently Used Records and Views	2.13
Tabs	2.15
Summary	2.16

Chapter 3—Record Management

Objective	3.1
Records	3.2
Creating a New Record	3.4
Record Landing Page	3.5
Create a Persons Record	3.8
Address Options	3.11
Review Record History	3.13
Add a Record to Favorites	3.14
Cloning Records	3.15
Wizards	3.16
Handling Duplication in Aptify	3.17
Summary	3.17

Chapter 4—Working with Views

Objective	4.1
Understanding Views	4.2
Creating List Views	4.4
Using View Filters	4.6
Display Fields	4.9
Sorting Data in Views	4.12
Advanced View Filters	4.13
Additional Filter Options	4.15
Using the Between Operator	4.17
Creating a Multi-Prompt View	4.23
Scheduling Views	4.25
Base Views	4.31
Creating a Chart View	4.33
Creating a Card View	4.36
Creating a Calendar View	4.37
Pivot Grids	4.39
Topic Codes	4.40
Managing and Sharing Views	4.42
Copying & Editing Existing Views (Desktop)	4.45

Chapter 5—Reports

Objective	5.1
Exporting a View to Microsoft Excel	5.2
Creating Reports	5.4
Running a Report	5.5
Analysis Reports	5.8
Creating Mailing Labels with Crystal Reports	5.11

Chapter 6—Contact Logs

Objective	6.1
Understanding Contact Logs	6.2
Creating a Contact Log from the Persons Service	6.3
Using the New Contact Log Entry Wizard	6.5
Contact Log Spaces	6.6
Contact Log Views	6.8

Chapter 7—Case Management

Objective	7.	.1
Creating Cases	7	.2
Case Views	7.	.4

Chapter 8—Committees

Objectives	. 8.1
Creating a Committees Record	. 8.2
Creating Committee Terms	8.3
Adding Members to Committees	. 8.4
Editing Member Information	. 8.7
Committee Views	. 8.8

Chapter 9—Products & Inventory

Objective	
Understanding Products	
Creating a New Products Record	
Understanding Pricing	
Adding Prices to a Product	
Creating a Related Product Prompt	
Inventory Objectives	
Creating an Inventory Location	
Creating a Product Inventory Ledger	
Creating a Product Inventory Ledger Entry	
General and Prerequisites Sub-tabs	
Creating a Kit Product	

Chapter 10—Order Entry

Objective	
Orders Overview	
Ordering a Product	
Creating a Multi-Line Order	
Creating a Quotation	
Company Only Orders	
Ordering a Kit Product	
Making a Partial Payment for an Order	
Applying a Discount	
Marking Orders As Shipped	
Cancelling an Order	
Orders Views	

Chapter 11—Payments

Objective	
Making a Payment	11.2
Multiple Payments to One Order	11.3
A Single Payment to Multiple Orders	11.5
Over Payments	11.7
Payments Views	11.8
•	

Chapter 12—Membership Dues & Subscriptions

Objective	12.1
Creating a Membership Dues Product	12.3
Ordering a Membership Dues Product	12.6
Membership Enrollment Wizard	12.7
Manually Renewing Memberships/Subscriptions	12.9
Auto-Renewing Memberships/Subscriptions	12.11
Fulfilling the Auto-Renewal Standing Order	12.12
Cancelling a Membership/Subscription	12.14
Membership Views	12.17

Chapter 13—Campaigns

Objective	13.1
Setting up a Campaign	13.2
Adding Prospects to a Campaign	13.4
Creating a Campaign Segment	13.6
Applying Campaigns to Orders	13.8
Campaign Views	13.10

Chapter 14—Meetings

Objective	
Using the New Meeting Wizard	14.2
Creating Meeting Registrations	14.10
Placing a Person on the Waiting List	
Cancelling a Registration	14.13
Transferring a Meeting Registration	14.15
Closing a Meeting	14.17
Meeting Views	14.19

APPENDICES

Appendix A—Awards

Objective	A.1
Defining Award Types	A.2
Tracking Award Nominations	A.3
Tracking Awards and Incentives	A.4

Appendix B—Sales Force Automation

Objective	B.1
Creating Opportunities Records	B.2

Appendix C—Accounting and Batching

Batching C. Creating an Orders Batch C. Creating a Payments Batch C. Creating a Scheduled Transaction Group. C.1 Creating a Scheduled Transactions Batch C.1 Creating a Scheduled Transactions Batch C.1 Creating a Scheduled Transactions Batch C.1 Cash Control Batches C.1 Appendix D—Expos C.1 Objective E. Appendix E—Publication Functions D. Objective D. Altering the Delivery Schedule D. Viewing Subscription Fulfillments D. Objective E. Appendix F—SQL Value Statements for Views Objective Objective E. Appendix G—User Profiles E.	Accounting Information	C.1
Creating an Orders Batch C. Creating a Payments Batch C. Expanding a Scheduled Transaction Group C.1 Creating a Scheduled Transactions Batch C.1 Cash Control Batches C.1 Cash Control Batches C.1 Appendix D—Expos C.1 Objective E. Appendix E—Publication Functions D. Objective D. Altering the Delivery Schedule D. Viewing Subscription Fulfillments D. Appendix F—SQL Value Statements for Views E. Objective E.	Batching	C.2
Creating a Payments Batch	Creating an Orders Batch	C.3
Expanding a Scheduled Transaction Group C.1 Creating a Scheduled Transactions Batch C.1 Cash Control Batches C.1 Appendix D—Expos C.1 Objective E. Appendix E—Publication Functions D. Objective D. Altering the Delivery Schedule D. Viewing Subscription Fulfillments D. Appendix F—SQL Value Statements for Views D. Objective E.	Creating a Payments Batch	C.8
Creating a Scheduled Transactions Batch	Expanding a Scheduled Transaction Group	C.11
Cash Control BatchesC.1 Appendix D—Expos ObjectiveE. Appendix E—Publication Functions ObjectiveD. Altering the Delivery ScheduleD. Viewing Subscription FulfillmentsD. D. Appendix F—SQL Value Statements for Views ObjectiveE.	Creating a Scheduled Transactions Batch	C.13
Appendix D—Expos Objective E. Appendix E—Publication Functions Objective D. Altering the Delivery Schedule D. Viewing Subscription Fulfillments D. Appendix F—SQL Value Statements for Views D. Objective E. Appendix G—User Profiles E.	Cash Control Batches	C.16
Objective E. Appendix E—Publication Functions D. Objective D. Altering the Delivery Schedule D. Viewing Subscription Fulfillments D. Appendix F—SQL Value Statements for Views D. Objective E. Appendix G—User Profiles E.	Appendix D—Expos	
Appendix E—Publication Functions D. Objective D. Altering the Delivery Schedule D. Viewing Subscription Fulfillments D. Appendix F—SQL Value Statements for Views D. Objective E. Appendix G—User Profiles E.	Objective	E.1
Objective D. Altering the Delivery Schedule D. Viewing Subscription Fulfillments D. Appendix F—SQL Value Statements for Views D. Objective E. Appendix G—User Profiles E.	Appendix E—Publication Functions	
Altering the Delivery ScheduleD. Viewing Subscription FulfillmentsD. Appendix F—SQL Value Statements for Views Objective	Objective	D.1
Viewing Subscription FulfillmentsD. Appendix F—SQL Value Statements for Views ObjectiveE. Appendix G—User Profiles	Altering the Delivery Schedule	D.2
Appendix F—SQL Value Statements for Views Objective Appendix G—User Profiles	Viewing Subscription Fulfillments	D.3
Objective	Appendix F—SQL Value Statements for Views	
Appendix G—User Profiles	Objective	E.1
	Appendix G—User Profiles	
Objective E.	Objective	E.1

Chapter



Introduction to Aptify

Objective	1.1
Introduction to End User Training	1.2
Log in to Aptify	1.3
Navigating Aptify	1.4
Aptify Terminology & Hierarchy	1.5

Objective

Welcome Aptify's End User training. This course introduces the Aptify system and covers how to access common features and functions. By the end of this course, students will have a solid foundation for using Aptify.

Users will learn how to:

- Navigate Aptify
- Locate, create, and work with records
- Create and manage views of data
- Generate reports
- Use Contact Logs, Cases, and Committees
- Create and order Products, Memberships, and Subscriptions
- Apply Payments
- Track Meeting Information

Introduction to End User Training

The following chapters and sample exercises will guide users through the various functions available in Aptify and how it should be used.

This course provides an overview of Aptify's basic features and will familiarize users with core functions of Aptify. It offers a solid background for users to become acquainted with the system as it introduces the basic Aptify framework, using a fictitious association's database to gain experience with a wide variety of system applications and creation of data views.

With step-by-step directions, users learn how to navigate the system as well as enter and view data by partaking in sample, hands-on exercises. The focus of this End User course and manual is learning the applications by using the system.

The overall goal of the course depends on its audience. For Implementation training of newly signed clients, Subject Matter Experts (SME's) representing a particular department within an organization will gain the knowledge to move into the Discovery phase of the Aptify implementation process in a more efficient and effective manner. For existing clients the course provides step-by-step directions and best practice instruction on the modules of Aptify that they can leverage in their departments. For this reason, the manual was constructed not just to support the class, but to to be utilized as a reference for Aptify users in their workplace.

Upon completion of the course, users will have learned the best practices regarding how to use Aptify for their needs and the Aptify terminology. For example, Aptify users learn that "persons" records are any person in their database, "products" are anything that can generate income, including a virtual product such as membership, a class or meeting, and physical products like publications.

Note that this course is conceptually divided into two parts: The **first half** of the course focuses on Aptify **navigation**, **terminology**, becoming familiar with record types and creating multiple view types. The second half focuses on **creating**, **ordering**, and **using products** such as Memberships and Meetings. Users will continue using views to report and communicate data.

Document Conventions:

In this manual bolded text are keyboard keys, e.g., **Esc** or **Enter**, and items to click or select from menus, for example, "Select **New Groups Record** and click **OK**".

Object names are in regular type and the first character is capitalized; for example, "The form includes the Name field.

Log in to Aptify

This exercise and those on the next several pages familiarize the user with the Aptify home screen and components.

Begin by logging in to Aptify and learn how to navigate to primary interface elements.

1. Double-click the Aptify Web shortcut on your desktop.



- 2. Click on the Authentication Method dropdown and select Untrusted|SQL Security.
 - This User represents a SQL Training DB user; a typical user would not get the Authentication screen but would directly display the Login screen.
- 3. Click OK.

Select Authentication Method	×
Authentication Method: Untrusted	
Domain Windows Integrated Security	ок
Untrusted SQL Security	

- 4. Click LogIn.
 - The Baseline login info previously populated/saved in Google Chrome.

Aptify	
Baseline	
	LOGIN

5. The Aptify Home screen displays.

Navigating Aptify

Aptify is designed to display data from multiple departments and/or functions in one database. When set up and used correctly, Aptify should be relatively simple and easy for each department to interface with on a daily basis.

Aptify should be navigated by using the Home dashboard, Quick/Global Search, Favorites, Dashboards, and Views. Users will always enter Aptify via the Home Dashboard and can then to navigate to the data using the other components mentioned above. When desiring to find large groupings of data, users should utilize Prompted List Views. When entering new data, users should employ focused Wizards tied to Dashboard buttons. When finding just one record is desired, users should use the Universal Search.

For a typical Aptify end user, the desired data should be no more than three clicks away. This structure is designed to make Aptify both flexible in its deployment and configuration and focused in its final design.

How Aptify Works

Aptify is Customer Relationship Software (CRM) designed for Association-based clients built around the following hierarchy:

- Applications
- Services
- Records
- Views
- Favorites
- Dashboards

Aptify Terminology & Hierarchy

Aptify helps organizations quickly access and manage their data by organizing it in a hierarchical fashion, with similar types of information grouped together. The following pages cover the main terms every Aptify user should know.

Initial Aptify Display

When Aptify opens, users automatically land on a **Home Dashboard**. The Home dashboard serves as a consolidated functional/viewing area that reflects the user's main tasks and the data they need to interact with regularly. The Home dashboard should be configured, via the users profile, to mirror users' department/functions within the database. For many, the Home dashboard and 2-3 additional dashboards (applications), will be all the access needed. For example, in addition to the Home dashboard, membership management users could leveragethe Membership and Orders application and their dashboards. These dahsboards would contain buttons to open new Persons records, apply payments, create orders, and perform functions such as run the New Member or New Order wizards.

Home should have a **Button Bar** tied to it that reflects main operations needed. For instance, a Customer Service Representative's Home could have a New Order, New Member, and a New Contact Log button. In contrast, an Accounting user's Home Dashboard might have New Order Batch and New Payment button.

Home should also have multiple, embedded **Views** that reflect the users' most important daily functions. A Customer Service Representative might have views titled, Orders Taken Today and/or Payments Taken Today. An Accounting user might see a view of Past Due Balances over the past 30 Days or Batches Scheduled for Today.

Favorites, located on the **Menu Bar**, will display no matter where the user navigates. They contain frequently used views that enable users to interact quickly/variably with data.

≡	Aptify Q All Y Search										🐥 🖈	ter Rather ~
x	😗 Home - Baseline 🗙											
	NEW ORDER WIZARD NEW PAYMENT	NEW COMPAN	Y NEW PERSON CO	ONTACT LOG WIZAR	NEW MEM	MBERSHIP MEME	BERSHIP CU	STOMERS ORDER	S MEETINGS			
	All 🗸	Today's O	rders									
		5	🗊 C 🏟	More 🔻								
-		D	SHIPTOCOMPANY	SHIPTONAN	IE	BILLTOCOMPANY	BIL	LTONAME	ORDERTYPE	ORDER STA	TUS TOTAL	BALANCE
•		10122	Danube Partners	Aiesha Baldw	n	Danube Partners	Ales	ha Baldwin	Regular	Taken	\$19.95	\$0.00
m		10123	Ottoman	Baka Lambert		Ottoman	Baka	a Lambert	Regular	Shipped	\$1,500.00	\$0.00
		10124	X.E. Awaken Compon Limited	ents Habika Harris		X.E. Awaken Con Limited	nponents Hab	ka Harris	Regular	Shipped	\$12.00	\$0.00
>												
			Þ								1-3	of 3 items C
=		My Conta	ct Logs									
Ħ			î C 🏟	More 🕶								
0			DATE DES	CRIPTION	CREATOR	TYPE	CATEGORY	ASSIGNED	то	PRIORITY	DATE/TIME	STATUS
••		681	11/06/201 5 06:30:01 Basel PM	ine Test	Baseline	Phone	Sales	End User	,	Medium	01/01/1900	In-Progress
		681	05/10/201 7 06:09:28 Billing AM mem	g dispute regarding bership dues.	Baseline	Phone	Sales	End User	,	Medium	05/16/2019	In-Progress

Applications

Applications are areas of Aptify that group conceptually-related services under a single heading. They are listed alphabetically by default and users can designate which Applications to display. Clicking on an Application provides a drop-down menu of available Services.

For example, the **Customer Management Application** groups several services, including Persons and Companies, which are focused on customer information. A user can access a service by first selecting an Application and then clicking one of the services it contains.

A	otify	≡
x	Home	
P	Spaces	
	Accounting	•
N	Campaign Management	•
	Case Management	•
-	Committee Management	•
97	Composite Engagement Score	•
m	Customer Management	•
S	e-Business	•
٢	Education	•
×.	Meeting Management	*
Ţ	Membership	•
Ħ	Order Entry	*
0	Product Maintenance	*
•••	Shipping	•
	Subscription Management	•

Note that a service can be listed under more than one Application. The Persons service is found under both Customer Management and Membership Applications. Also be aware that administrators can create their own Applications and change which services are associated with an Application.

A typical user will only have 2-4 Applications that are used regularly and should be displayed, unlike the list shown in the screenshot above.

Dashboards

A user always land on the Home dashboard.However, once an Application is selected from the Applications menu, the area to the right will display that selected Application's dashboard - the Home dashboard location will then be selectable from a separate tab. A dashboard is an interactive display that provides access to common functions and information aiding the user in daily activities. Application dashboards typically feature two main areas:

Buttons that perform frequently used functions:

- Creating records
- Launching wizards

Views that summarize or provide tasks:

- Data for a given time frame/status
- Records assigned to the logged in user

Dashboards can also include Web Browsers and embedded Reports.

Users can switch between applications to access different dashboards.

NEW MEETING WIZARD ORDER WIZARD						
Future Meetings						
📙 🗹 🗎 🏛 C 🎄 More▼						
ID MEETING TITLE	START DATE EN	D DATE CITY	STATE COUNTRY	COORDINATOR	TOTAL REGISTRANTS	TOTAL WAITLIST
▲ 61 XYZ Meeting	12/07/2016 12/	11/2016 Marathon	FL United Sta	stes John Samuels	0	3
A 62 XYZ Session I	12/07/2016 12:00:00 12/ PM PM	07/2016 01:00:00 Homestead	FL United Sta	ites John Samuels	1	0
((1)	10/00/0017 00:00.00 10/	00.0047 05.00.00				1-9 of 9 items C
Meeting Registrations Last 30 Days						
🔥 🗹 🛗 🏢 C 🎄 More▼						
D ID ORDER DATE MEETING NAME	ATTENDEE ID NAME	ATTENDEE STATUS NAME	SHIP TO NAME	SHIP TO COMPANY	BILL TO COMPANY	ARRIVAL DATE
10142 01/14/2016 Golf Tournament	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners	Registered	Hannah Taylor	Gemstone Solutions Group	Gemstone Solutions Group	01/01/1900
10141 01/14/2016 Golf Tournament	Taylor, Hannah/Gemstone Solutions Group	Cancelled	Hannah Taylor	Gemstone Solutions Group	Gemstone Solutions Group	01/01/1900
						1-12 of 12 items C
All Meeting Speakers (BASE VIEW)						
📙 🗷 🛗 🏛 C 🎄 More 🕶						
D ID MEETING TITLE	MEETING PRODUCT NAME	MEETING START DATE	MEETING END DATE	MEETING SPEAKER NAME		MEETING SPEAKER STATUS
17 Golf Tournament	Golf Tournament	05/15/2010 08:00:00 AM	05/15/2010 03:00:00 PM	Zagreb, Tracey/N Porterhouse Filtration Manag	gement AB	Accepted
5 Sampco 2007 Annual Conference	Sampco 2007 Annual Conference	05/14/2007	05/17/2007	Garcia, Kaitlyn/N.G.N. Derived Industrial Produ	cts Corp.	Accepted
{ (1 2 3 4 5 ▶						1 - 25 of 153 items 🛛 🕑

The Dashboard displayed above is for the **Meeting Management** Application. It contains two buttons: New Meeting Wizard and Order Wizard. These buttons enable a Meetings user to perform data entry efficiently. Below the button bar are three views: Future Meetings, Meeting Registrations Last 30 Days, and All Meeting Speakers (BASE VIEW). These three views serve to display data that is core to the function of a user concerned with Meetings.

Dashboards can be edited to fit departments and groups needs by an administrator. A different Home dashboard can be created for any identified department or function.

Wizards

A wizard is a step-by-step guide that helps users enter information or perform a task. They are usually tied to dashboard buttons for easy access. Wizards are divided into several screens, or pages, where the user selects an option or adds a value before advancing to the next page.

New Meeting Wiza	rd				8
0-					
Intro	New Meeting Basic Info	New Meeting Web and Pricing Info	Cloned Meeting Basic Info	Cloned Meeting Session and Other Details	Confirm and Finish
Welcome to the New M	eeting Wizard!				
This wizard walks you t	hrough the process of add	ing a new meeting to Aptify.			
If you want to use a cop Existing Meeting link bo	by of an existing meeting as ox and click Next. Otherwis	s your starting point, select a e, to start with a blank meet	a record using the Copy ing, just click Next.		
Copy Existing Meetin	ng		٩	3	
1					
		•	•		
CANCEL		🤤 ВАСК	NEXT		

Wizards save time by presenting all the steps of a task in a single location. Conversely, if a user opened a new record directly from a service (not using a wizard) to enter data, they would often have to navigate through multiple areas to enter the required data. Wizards vastly simplify this process.

Benefits of wizards:

- Speed
- Data Integrity
- Consistency of which data entered, required
- Ease no jumping from tab to tab

Wizards can easily be built by Developers, and placed on Dashboards by Administrators, to simplify data entry.

Services

A Service represents a specific type of record and its related functions. The Persons Service is the collection of all Persons records, while the Companies Service is the collection of all Companies records. Each record in a Service follows the same format and contains the same type of information. For example, every Persons record has a First Name field but does not contain the Company Type field; the Company Type field is only found in Companies records.

The term, Service, also refers to a location in Aptify from where these records can be accessed. A user would navigate to the Persons Service, or area of Aptify, to create Persons records and employ persons-related features. Services are most commonly accessed from the Applications menu.

From a technical perspective, a Service is known as an **Entity**, which is a database table and its related objects. These tables and objects are where the actual data is stored.

m	Customer Management	*
	Companies	
	Contact Log	
	Persons	
	Tasks	
	Member Types	

The screenshot above displays the Services associated with the Customer Management Application: Companies, Contact Log, Persons, Tasks, and Member Types. As with Applications, a typical user might have different Services displayed based on their original profile. The displayed Services can be changed by clicking on the gear button in the upper-right hand area of Aptify.

Views

A View displays a specified subset of the records from a service. Persons are the most frequently viewed service in Aptify since that service contains an organization's members.

Examples of typical Persons views:

- Persons with Memberships expiring in 30 Days
- Persons with outstanding balances on their account
- Persons belonging to a particular committee

The most commonly used type of View is the List View, which shows a summary of each record's most important information in a row-and-column format. The View name appears above the grey, data control bar.

Persons	- With Committees (BASE VIEW)							
	🗹 🛗 🗊 C 🎄 More 🕶							
D	NAME/COMPANY	COMMITTEE NAME	TERM	TERM MEMBER STAR	TERM MEMBER END	TERM	ADDRESS LINE 1	CITY
1	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners	Audit Committee	2012-2013 Audit Committee	01/01/2012	12/31/2013		910 Southwest Union Avenue	Palo Alto
1	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners	Standards Committee	2012-2013 Standards Committee	01/01/2012	12/31/2013		910 Southwest Union Avenue	Palo Alto
1	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners	XYZ Committee	2015 XYZ Committee Term	01/30/2014	01/29/2015		910 Southwest Union Avenue	Palo Alto
5	Yukon, Dacey/Polyhedron Power Devices	Standards Committee	2014 Standards Committee	01/01/2014	12/31/2014		8383 North Colombo Street	Milpitas
15	Wade, Pamela/Galería del gastrónomo	Audit Committee	2008 Audit Committee	01/01/2008	12/31/2008	Member	Rambla de Cataluña, 23	Tokyo
15	Wade, Pamela/Galería del gastrónomo	Audit Committee	2002 Audit Committee	01/01/2002	12/31/2002	Member	Rambla de Cataluña, 23	Tokyo
15	Wade, Pamela/Galería del gastrónomo	Audit Committee	1999 Audit Committee	01/01/1999	12/31/1999	Member	Rambla de Cataluña, 23	Tokyo
34	Carter, Gary/Clingstone Welding Supply Group, Inc.	Standards Committee	2012-2013 Standards Committee	01/01/2012	12/31/2013		289 East Castillon Street	Lincolnshire
48	Jackson, Wainwright/Let's Stop N Shop	XYZ Committee I	2015 XYZ Committee	01/30/2014	01/01/2017	Member	87 Polk St. Suite 5	San Francisco
65	Tate, Odessa/Océano Atlántico Ltda.	Audit Committee	2012-2013 Audit Committee	01/01/2012	12/31/2013		Ing. Gustavo Moncada 8585 Piso 20-A	Buenos Aires
83	Lewis, Ian/Rancho grande	Standards Committee	2012-2013 Standards Committee	01/01/2012	12/31/2013		Av. del Libertador 900	Buenos Aires
90	Byrd, Quillan/Cottonwood Taping Systems	XYZ Committee I	2015 XYZ Committee	01/30/2014	01/01/2017	Member	8991 Monet Street	San Francisco
150	Pintaro, Yale/Spécialités du monde	Audit Committee	1997 Audit Committee	01/01/1997	12/31/1997	Member	25, rue Lauriston	Paris
150	Pintaro, Yale/Spécialités du monde	Board of Directors	1999 BOD	01/01/1999	12/31/1999	Member	25, rue Lauriston	Paris

Users can double-click a row to open a specific record.

Users can also control which data displays in a View by changing it's filters that are configured via its properties (See Chapter 4 for more details.

Views do not just display data, they are used to generate reports, perform operations, contact individuals, bulk update specific records, etc.

Views be created in other formats than a List view such as Charts, Calendars, Pivot Grids, Card, and Maps.

Records

A record is a collection of information and may contain details about a particular Person, Company, Order, Product, Meeting, Payment, etc. The information a record contains is divided into sections and stored in fields. A Persons record, for example, lists a person's name, contact information (address, phone number, etc.) and other relevant data about a specific individual. A Companies record, in comparison, lists a company's name, contact information, the number of employees, and any other relevant data. Record layout and fields are covered in greater detail in the Managing Records chapter.

Two types of Aptify records, Persons and Companies, initially display a landing page when accessed. The landing page contains a summary of the record's information as well as functions related to that record.

		MEMPERCIUS CTATUS	KEV DEMOCRAPHICS
	CONTACTINFORMATION	MEMDERSHIF STATUS	NET DEMUGRAFITUS
	Danube Partners	Individual Membership: Member	Voting District: CA
an an an	Aiesha Baldwin Datube Partners	Company Membership: Corporate Member	Certification Expiration:
	910 Southwest Union Avenue	Dues Information	
	Palo Alto, CA 94301		
	Aiesha Baldwin@demodata antify.com		
	(650) 750-9187		
Aiesha Baldwin	- NOTES/LATEST UPDATES-		
Marketing Senior Director	XYZ Meeting.		
Danube Partners			
40 60	MEMBERSHIP TIMELINE		
20 80	All Activities V from Last 3 Months	~	
0 100	Total \$475.00	Status : Shipped 📜 Orders To	otal (\$100.00) Status : Shipped
CES Score: 30	01/14/2016 XYZ Meeting	01/14/2016	/Z Meeting
ACTIONS	ID: 10135	ID: 10139	
Actions			
Send Message	Total \$250.00	Status : Shipped 🛛 📜 Orders To	otal \$250.00 Status : Shipped
Create Order	01/13/2016 07:5 XXZ Membership Dues	01/13/2016	7 Membership Dues
Add Contact Log	7:00 AM	ID: 10129	
Add New Membership	10:10131		
View Full Record	💓 Orders Total \$80.00	Status : Taken 🛛 🗞 Memberships 🗙	Z Membership Dues Status : Active
- Henry an Accord	01/13/2016 XX7 Product	01/13/2016	
	ID:10132	ID : 1921	
			1 - 17 of 17 items C

If a user desires more in depth information regarding one of those two records, they can click the **View Full Record** button in the lower-left hand corner of the landing page to display the entire record. Users may in turn navigate to different areas of that record by clicking the selection drop-down that defaults to Contact in the center of the record.

8		0	2 🔺	Mo	ore 👻
Name Title Company	t Alesha J Baldwin Marketing Senior Director				
Contact -	Company Member Typ CES Score: 30	e: Ci	orporate Member		
Contact Contact Persona Educati Compar Relatior Lists Topic C Saved F Person	al on hies hships odes Payment Methods Tax Exempt Codes		Membership Functions Contect Log Incomplete Orders Orders Outations All Linked Orders Subscriptions Meetings		Committees Analysis Contact Count By Year/Cate Sales By Year/Quarter CES Score Awards Pictures Comments Attachments
	Primary Email Phone 1 650 750-	~ 9187	Alesha.Baldwin@de	emod	ata.aptify.com

Chapter





Aptify Basics

Aptify Display	2.2
Applications	2.3
Settings Button	2.7
Managing Settings	2.8
Quick & Global Search	2.10
Most Recently Used Records and Views	2.13
Tabs	2.14
Summary	2.15

Objective

In this chapter, users will learn the basic layout of Aptify by:

- Understanding Basic Aptify Terminology
- Adding and Removing Applications
- Adding and Removing Services
- Working with Favorites
- Viewing the Exception Log

Aptify Display

Overview of Initial Aptify Display

The main Aptify screen, or workspace, is divided into several areas, The Top Tool Bar, a leftside Menu Bar of Applications and Favorites, and the largest portion- the Dashboard. The following is an overview of these primary Aptify areas.

Top Tool Bar

Aptify's browser-based interface includes a tool bar that runs the length of the browser window. This tool bar remains in place to provide persistent navigation features" or "navigation features that are always visible.

The tool bar includes the following functions and information, left to right:



Expansion button: On the left side of the Search bar, the square, 3 lined button enables users to display or contract the Applications.

Quick Search, Global Search and Search History: The Search function enables users to search across multiple services in Aptify or across client linked sources. Search results display in card format. Clicking on an item opens it in a new tab.

Spaces Alert Indicator (Bell): When a user is tagged in a Spaces thread, this icon flashes an alert.

Favorites Menu (Star): Users can create their own Groups of Favorited Views. Extremely useful for shortcutting repeatedly accessed Views.

Settings Button (Gear Button): Enables the user to configure their screen's appearance by hiding and showing applications, closing tabs, viewing exception logs, etc. This button will be covered in greater detail later in this chapter.

User Login Status (Online of Offline) (Circle): Indicates whether the user is currently connected to the Aptify database and can work with records or view information. Green indicates an online states, orange is disconnected. Clicking the text by the circle when offline will attempt to refresh the connection.

Under the far left dropdown arrow:

- **Community Site (Aptify A)**: The Aptify Community Site provides access to discussions, documentation and e-Learning videos, and facilitates cooperation with other organizations utilizing Aptify.
- **Messenger Icon**: When selected will display a messaging box that enables users to quickly text each other while online.
- Logout button: Used to exit Aptify.

Applications

Applications

The left side of the Aptfiy workspace contains a menu containing all selected Aptify Applications. When the downward facing arrows are expanded next to each Application, they display that Applications associated **Services**.

This tab may be hidden or displayed by default, but can be unpinned to enable more screen workspace by clicking on the circled icon in the upper right hand side of the section.

A	otify (
A	Home	
P	Spaces	
	Accounting	*
N	Campaign Management	*
	Case Management	*
*	Committee Management	*
•	Composite Engagement Score	*
m	Customer Management	*
5	e-Business	*
٢	Education	*
	Meeting Management	*
-	Membership	*
Ħ	Order Entry	*
*	Product Maintenance	*
••	Shipping	*
	Subscription Management	•

Favorites

Favorites are links that enables users to open frequently used views or records with a single click. They are useful for quickly accessing important data. Favorites should be part of a user-profile and based on the profile's department/function.

The Favorites menu is accessed by clicking the **Favorites** button (with a star icon), from the far, upper right hand button menu. Users can mark a view as a favorite using the **More** dropdown and selecting Add to Favorites. This option is located on every displayed View. Once chose for a view or record, that item will under the Home Group, under the Favorites Star. Clicking on a favorited View from a Group opens that View.

Creating a Favorite Group

- 1. Click the **Favorites** button (star).
 - Users will observe several pre-existing Favorites Groups and Favorites.

CREATE GROUP	1
Customer/Member Searches	í
Find Person	
Find Company	
Find Persons - Join	l
Date/Membership	l
Contact Log	
Services	
Orders	
Payments	
Membership	
Meeting/Events	
Campaigns	

- 2. Click the Create Group button.
- 3. In the Group **Name** field, enter **My Favorites**. A Description, Icon and Rank can be entered, but for now, leave these fields blank.
- 4. Click Save.
- 5. The group name appears in the Favorites column.

New Favorites	Groups Record			
More •				
General 🗸				
Name	My Favorites			
Description				
3				
lcon				
Rank	999999			
	l			

Adding a Favorite

1. In the Quick Search, enter Find Payments - Click Find Payments view that displays.

🔍 All 🗸 F	Find Payments	
🕕 Horr	My Views - 5 r	ecords shown out of 6 matches
	Find Payments	
	ID	18268
	View Type	List View
	Entity	Payments
All	Owner	BaselineAdmin

2. From the view, click the More button. From drop-down, click Add View to Favorites.

More 🔻
Record History
Export to Excel
Reports
Add To List
Add View To Favorites
Auto-Resize Columns
Messaging
Entity Bulk Operations Wizard
Add Persons To Committee Wizard
Add Persons To Campaign

- 3. Click the **Favorites** button.
- 4. Click the Favorites group, Home, to see the Find Payments view.
- 5. Click the view to open it.

Moving a Favorite

Items default to the Home Group, but can be moved to another Favorites Group.

1. Click the right side of Find Payments. When the Move button appears, click it.

Accounting
Sales Force
Home
Find Paymen 🚵 MOVE

- 2. On the Select Group screen, enter My Favorites, click Select.
- 3. Refresh the Browser window this is necessary to cache the new Favorite.
- 4. Click My Favorites to see the Find Payments view.

Displaying/Not Displaying the Applications Menu

Favorites makes it easy to quickly find a particular record or view no matter where a user is in the system, as the Applications Menu bar will remain visible unless hidden using the Display button. When clicked to hide, it frees up screen space to display dashboards and other data.

5. On the right side of the Applications menu, click the display button (once, not doubleclick). The panel slides to the left.



Settings Button

The Settings (gear) button displays menu enabling users to control various Aptify functions.

- 1. Click the Customer Management application.
- 2. Click the Settings button from the upper right corner of Aptify display.



- 3. The following menu displays:
 - Server: Indicates the server the user logged into.
 - **Build Version:** Indicates the current version number of Aptify.
 - **Configure Applications:** Adds/removes Applications from the Menu Bar.
 - Configure Customer Management: Opens the Application the user has currently accessed (Customer Management). This action only access when



ment). This option only appears when an Application is selected in the Menu bar.

- Close All Tabs: Closes all open tabs.
- Close All But Active Tab: Closes every tab except selected one.
- **Open Tab in New Window:** Opens the current tab in a new browser window; useful for comparing data side-by-side.
- Clear Pending Changes: Undoes pending changes that have not yet been saved.
- Clear Exceptions: Removes all items from the Exception Viewer.
- Reset Application: Closes all tabs, refreshes Aptify, & returns to Home
- Logout: Exits Aptify.
- 4. Click the dropdown arrow to the right: an auxilliary menu displays:

Baseline !
Connect to Aptify Community
Messenger
➡ Logout

- Connects to Aptify Community: User can access Aptify's online Community
- Messenger: Enables user to communicate directly to any other Aptify user.
- Logout

Managing Settings

Managing Applications

Users can add and remove which applications display in the Applications menu to simplify the list. Removing an application from the list does not delete any data, just the availability from the display screen. (After "go-live" time frame, most users will not need to employ this feature as their account should already contain all necessary items). Users can return to the Home dashboard at any time by clicking the **Home** item at the top of the menu.

- 1. From the Settings button, click Configure Applications. Scroll to see the list.
 - Applications are added/removed by selecting/de-selecting the Application name from the menu.
 - Those that appear in gray are currently displayed on the user's screen and those in white are available, but not currently visible.
- 2. Click the Chapter Management Application to select. It now appears as gray.
- 3. Click to de-select Product Management and Shipping.

Aptify Applications			
SELECT ALL	UNSELECT ALL OK CANCEL		
⊻ ≣	Accounting (28) Description: Accounting Application		
• <u>*</u>	Advertising (56) Name: Advertising Management Description: This application contains the entities associated with Aptify Advertising.		
	Authorizations (78)		
⊻ 🧣	Awards (59) Name: Award Management Description: Aptify Award Management Application.		
2	Campaign Management (29) Description: Campaign Management		

- 4. Click OK.
 - Note the change in Applications displayed in the left side screen **Applications** column.

Managing Services

Services can be added or removed from displaying within Applications to save space and provide ease in locating them. The process is similar to managing application display.

In this exercise, add the Functions service to the Customer Management application.

- 5. From the Menu bar, click Customer Management to make it the active application.
- 6. Click the Settings button. The Application now displays in the settings column.
- 7. Select Configure Customer Management.

Server:		
Build Version: 5.5.4.96		
Configure Applications		
Configure Customer Management		
🗙 Close All Tabs		

- 8. From Application menu, click the Education Levels service to add.
- 9. Click OK.



10. Education Levels service appears listed under Customer Management Application.

Quick & Global Search

Quick Search

Aptify enables users to find records, views, wizards, attachments, etc. by using the Quick Search feature. Quick Search is an effective tool for immediately locating records as it:

- Always remains visible at the top of the Aptify interface
- Initially returns the first 5 records of any type of record
- Can be targeted for specific types of records
- Provides the user with a total number of available records
- Is linked to the Global Search by use of the More button

Use the Quick Search feature to locate Aiesha Baldwin's Persons record.

- 1. Click in the Quick Search box at the top of the screen.
- 2. Type Baldwin.
 - Do NOT select Enter or Tab



3. Results appear in Card format:



Narrowing Search Results

Search Results can be narrowed by using the drop-down list to the left.

- 1. Click the **arrow** next to the **search bar** to open a drop-down list.
- 2. Select **Companies** to search only within the Companies service.
- 3. Click in the search box and enter American.
 - A list of matching Companies records appears.



To search and select a particular view:

- 1. Click on the All dropdown on left of Quick Search box.
- 2. Scroll to click Views.
- 3. Enter 25 Random People.
- 4. From results click the view name to run the view.

Search using "Contains"

Including a percentage sign,"%", before your search text queries for results using the "contains" parameter.

Users should limit their use of the contains operator since doing so can increase the time it takes to return search results.

Global Search

More comprehensive searches can be conducted using the Global Search option.

Global Search enable users to:

- Return ALL results for search criteria, not just the first five of Quick Search
- Filter the Search results by recognized Categories
- Page through results
- 1. In the Search field, enter Sampco.
- 2. Ignore the Quick Search results.
- 3. Click on the Magnifying Glass button to the left of the Search box.



4. Note the various Categories which are included in the returned information.



Search History:

Users can also access their Search History and re-run those queries.

• Click the Magnifying Glass with the Clock button, located to the right of the search box. The search history will display the previously selected search results in a new tab.

sampco	SEARCH)
--------	--------	---

Most Recently Used Records and Views

Located to the right of the Favorites column, the **Home** dashboard includes a **Most Recently Used** records component, which by default, displays all the most recently opened records or views. Administrators can modify each department Dashboard's most recently used component to only display certain types of records. In addition, administrators can specify the number of records shown before newly opened items replace the oldest items listed.

Note that the icon shown to the left of an item can be used to identify whether the item is a view or a record from a particular service.

All	~
	Find Person
**	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners
	Persons - With Committees (BASE VIEW)
	Committees & Persons (BASE VIEW)
**	User, End/Danube Partners
	Danube Partners
**	Wade, Alexandra/U. Hardwick Physics AB
	Gemstone Solutions Group
**	Taylor, Hannah/Gemstone Solutions Group
**	Lambert, Baka/Ottoman

Clicking an entry in the Most Recently Used records opens the item, and is a quick and useful way of accessing data.

- 1. Click the drop-down arrow to the right of All.
- 2. Note the icon for the type of items in the list.
- 3. Click to select Views.

Tabs

Whenever a user opens a record, view, or dashboard, it displays under its own tab.

If multiple items are opened, each new item's tab will appear next to the previous tab, similar to the way multiple websites appear when using tabs in a web browser.

The currently selecte tab displays with a red underline.



Users can close a tab by clicking the " \mathbf{x} " located in a tab's upper-right corner and open another by clicking on the name. Users can switch to an extisting tab by clicking in a separate browser window to more easily compare data.

- 1. Click the X to close the Home-Baseline tab.
- 2. Click the Settings button to display the drop-down menu.
- 3. Observe the Tab options:
 - Close All Tabs
 - Close All But Active Tab
 - Open Tab in New Window

Summary

- Applications and Favorites can be configured by the user.
- The Menu bar and Settings button are used to navigate Aptify and change settings.
- Quick Search is the most effective method for locating records, views, attachments, etc in Aptify.

Summary
Chapter

3



Record Management

Objective	3.1
Records	
Creating a New Record	
Record Landing Page	
Create a Persons Record	
Address Options	
Review Record History	
Add a Record to Favorites	
Cloning Records	
Wizards	
Handling Duplication in Aptify	
Summary	

Objective

Records represent a basic block of information in Aptify.

In this chapter, users will learn how to:

- Read, edit, and save a record
- Create Persons and Companies records
- View Record History
- Add a record to Favorites

Records

Overview

In Aptify, a record refers to a specific set of information, while a record's form is the display of that data and accompanying buttons for the user interface, such as Save and Delete. All record forms follow a common format and employ similar features.

Record Areas

Once records are saved - usually with a Name, Address, or other minimally required fields - they are stamped with a unique SQL Row ID and all of the Record Areas: tabs, fields, and functions become available. All records contain the following features:

Record Name and ID: Each record in a service has a name and a unique ID within that service. Records in other services may use the same number. When saved, a record is given the next sequential ID number which displays in the new tab.

Button Bar: Every top-level record contains a row of buttons above its information that is used for saving the record and accessing other common functions.

Fields: Includes any area where the user can input information. Fields are covered in greater detail later in this chapter.

Sections: Records may display multiple areas that organize a record's information into categories. Sections typically contain additional fields or views of related records. They are accessed through a section heading bar that displays the name of the currently visible section.

More Dropdown

Each record contains a **More** drop-down menu. The More drop-down menu allows the user to access the following features and functions:

Changes - Displays the changes made since the record was last saved.

Print Record - Opens the Report Wizard which allows the user to generate and export reports that contain the record's data.

Add To List - Adds the record to a designated List, which is a static collection of records from a particular service

Record Cloning - Clones the record with an temporary designation of (ID:-1). Enables users to quickly create an identical copy of the record initially opened. Useful for similair Contact Logs, Cases, Classes, etc.

Open in New Window - Opens the record in a new browser tab, which in Chrome, can be dragged into a separate window. This can be useful for comparing the record side-by-side with another record.

Add To Favorites - Adds the record to the Favorites area for ease of access. This becomes a Remove From Favorites on a record that has been previously Added.

Load from Template - Enables users to add records with predetermined information

Data Control Bar

Displays across top of **all** records. The Data Control Bar contains the following functions::

Save: Saves the record and keeps the record open.

Save and Close: Saves and closes the record.

Save and New: Saves the record and opens a new record in its place.

Delete: Deletes the record. This option only appears when the user has been given the appropriate permission. If a record has dependencies (records that link back to the current record) the delete function will notify the user that the record cannot be deleted.

View Record History: If enabled for the service, displays a log of the changes made to the record.

Refresh Record: Undoes changes done to the record since initially opened.

Record Field Types

Users enter data into record fields, which are typically empty rectangular areas that can accept text, dates, numbers, or pre-determined list options. Fields can also display as check-boxes.

Some fields may be required to be completed before a record can be saved. Fields may also contain "validation" where the data entered must meet certain criteria.

The following are some of the most common types of fields:

Text Field: Accepts standard letters and numbers. Some text fields may allow users to include multiple lines or HTML formatting. Text fields can also contain email addresses or websites.

Numeric Field: Accepts integers or if specified, decimal values.

Date Field: Stores either a date, or a date with time. These fields have an adjacent Calendar button that enables users to select a date from a calendar display, rather than typing in the value.

Drop-down List: Stores a selection of values for a user to choose from a list. These fields sometimes allow a user to type in their own value.

Check box: Can be clicked to select or un-select to indicate a choice.

Link Box: Connects the currently opened record to another service's record. For example, a Persons record often links to the Companies record they work for.

- Clicking a linked field with a value opens the corresponding record.
- Clicking a linked field with a blank value creates a new record and, if saved, enters the new record into the linked field.
- Users can search for an existing related record and populate the field with it.

Creating a New Record

A new record can be created from several locations:

- From a Dashboard Button
- From a Service
- From an Existing Record

The **New** button will be indicated by the following text (Persons example) and is located on the right hand side of every Service:

NEW PERSONS

Persons and Companies

Persons and Companies are the two most commonly used record types. They represent the individuals or businesses with which an organization has a relationship.

Persons: Represent any individual for whom your organization needs to store and track information. Most persons records might be members and store membership information, but can also represent vendors, points of contact, government officials, etc.

Companies: Most commonly represent members' and customers' business contact information, but can also include vendors, suppliers, contractors, or other businesses.

- A Persons record can be linked to Companies record to show association with the company. A Persons record can also exist independently of a company.
- Both the Persons service and the Companies service can be accessed from various applications, most commonly via **Customer Management** application.

Record Landing Page

When a previously created Persons or Companies record is opened, it displays a landing page. Landing pages are currently available for both Persons and Companies records. Landing pages provide a variety of information in non-editable, summary form. They also enable quick access to commonly used functions under an **Actions** menu on the left side.

The landing page provides an optional **Photo** location along with **Contact Information**, **Membship Status**, and **Key Demographics** information across the top. Each of these areas contains underlined, linked fields which provide further information when the mouse cursor is hovered over the link. Users can also click the link to open the specified record.

The middle section contains **Notes/Latest Updates**. This displays the latest changes to the record.

The third section contains an interactive **Membership Timeline** where users can filter by All, Orders, Contact Logs, Subscriptions, or Membership records related to the record. Users can search records over Last 3 or 6 Months, Last 1 or 5 Years, or enter a desired Date Range.

Underneath the Photo section is a **CES** (Customer Engagement Score) indicator. CES will be explained later in the course but it represents an aggregate "score" of the member's activity.

Below that is an **Actions** section containing buttons that enable users to Send Message (via email), Create Order, Add Contact Log, Add New Membership, and to View Full Record.

	CONTACT INFORMATIO Danube Partners Aiesha Baldwin Danube Partners 910 Southwest Union Av Palo Alto CA 84251	DN enue	MEMBERSHIP STATUS Individual Membership: Company Membership: <u>Dues Information</u>	S Member Corporate Member	KEY DEMOGRAPHICS Voting District: CA Certification Expiration	r
Alesha Baldwin Marketing Senior Director Danube Partners	Valida (JA 930) United States <u>Alesha Baldwin@demoda</u> (650) 750-9187 - NOTES/LATEST UPDATE XYZ Meeting.	ta.aptify.com S				
40 60	MEMBERSHIP TIMELIN	From Last 3 Months	~			
0 - 100 CES Score: 30 ACTIONS	Orders 01/14/2016 ID: 10135	Total \$475.00 XYZ Meeting	Status : Shipped	Orders 01/14/2016 ID:10139	Total (\$100.00) XYZ Meeting	Status : Shipped
Send Message Create Order Add Contact Log	Orders 01/13/2016 07:5 7:00 AM ID : 10131	Total \$250.00 XYZ Membership Dues	Status : Shipped	Orders 01/13/2016 ID:10129	Total \$250.00 XYZ Membership Dues	Status : Shipped
View Full Record	Orders 01/13/2016 ID : 10132	Total \$80.00 XYZ Product	Status : Taken	Memberships 01/13/2016 ID : 1921	XYZ Membership Dues	Status : Active
						1 - 17 of 17 items 🛛 C

Create a Companies Record

In this exercise, users will create a **Companies** record which will be used throughout the remaining exercises in this manual.

- 1. Click the **Home** dashboard tab.
- 2. Click the New Companies button.

NEW COMPANY

- A new Companies record opens in another tab.
- 3. In the Name field, enter a fictitious company name.
 - Required fields are indicated by the red border.
- 4. From the Company Type drop-down list, select Not For Profit.
- 5. Under the **Contact** heading, enter fictitious **Address Information** including the street, city, state and zip code.
- 6. Under the Main Phone drop-down list, enter a fictitious Phone Number.

88	H C A More -
Na	rent XYZ Corporation
Company T	ype Other For Profit 🗸 🗸
Account Mana	iger 🔍 🕂
Contact 🗸	
	Street Address 🗸
Line 1	1500 Demo Drive
Line 2	
Line 3	
City, State ZIP	Salt Lake City UT V 90152
County	
Country	United States V Bad Address
Pref. Bill Addr.	Street Address
Pref. Ship Addr.	Street Address
	Main Phone 🗸
	1 215 252-1111 x
	Main Em 🗸
WebSite	a
Billing Contact	Q. 🖶

7. Click Save.

- Contact 🗸 📕 Membership 🕵 Committees Contact ✗ Details Persons Analysis Organization Contact Count By Year/Category Company Browser Account Managers Sales By Year/Quarter 🗛 Contact Log Relationships Persons By State Incomplete Persons By Country Tax Exempt Complete Product Codes Comments 🗾 Orders Lists General Orders Divisions/Subsidiaries Other Quotations Topic Codes All Linked Orders Attachments Saved Payment Methods Subscriptions
- 8. Click the Contact heading to open the record's Section menu as shown below:

- 9. Under the Details heading, select the Organization menu item.
 - A new section appears and the Contact section is hidden.
- 10. From the Credit Status drop-down list, select Approved.
 - This enables any Person linked to the company to use Purchase Order Payment Method when placing an order.
- 11. In the Credit Limit field, enter 2000.
 - This sets the maximum amount that can be purchased on credit.

Details > Organization 🗸					
Credit Status	Approved	\sim			
Credit Limit	\$2,000.00				

12. Click Save.

Create a Persons Record

In this exercise, create a Persons record from the Companies record so that it will be linked to the company.

- 1. From your **Companies** record, click the **Details > Organization** heading.
- 2. Select Persons.
- 3. Under the Persons heading, click the New record button:



- 4. A new Persons record appears under a new tab.
 - Observe the Company field and address information are already completed; Aptify populates a Person's business address using their company's information.
 - Users can also create a new Persons record directly from the Persons service.
- 5. In the First Name and Last Name fields, enter a Name.
- 6. In the Title field, enter a Job Title.
- 7. Click Business Address to show the other available address fields.
- 8. Select Home Address.

Contact 🗸		
Account Manager		
	Business Address	>
Line 1	✓ Business Address	
Line 2	Billing Address	
Line 3	Home Address	
City, State ZIP	PO Box Address	

- 9. Enter a Fictitious Home Address.
- 10. Click the square Address Options button next to the Address Selector drop-down list.

11. From the drop-down list, select Add New Address.



12. In the Aptify Address dialog that appears, enter Vacation.

Aptify Address	⊗
Enter the new name for the address Vacation	
OK CANCEL	

- 13. Click OK.
 - A blank Contact area of your Persons record displays.
- 14. In the address fields, enter a fictitious Vacation address.
- 15. Click Save.
- 16. Click the Address Selector drop-down list.
 - Once the record is saved, a check mark appears next to any addresses that have information entered.
- 17. Click the square Address Options button.

Vacation	<
 Business Address 	
✓ Billing Address	
Home Address	
PO Box Address	
✓ Vacation	

18. Select Setup Default Addresses and Date Ranges.

- 19. For the Vacation Address, enter the following settings:
 - Address Type: Vacation
 - Setting: Date Range
 - Start Date: 06/1/20xx (where xx is the current year)
 - End Date: 08/31/20xx (where xx is the current year)

Address Defaults Settings								8
ADDRESS	ADDRESS TYPE		SETTING		START DATE		END DATE	
Business Address	Name	\checkmark	Never	\checkmark				
Billing Address	Name	~	Never	\checkmark				
Home Address	Name	~	Never	~				
PO Box Address	Name	~	Never	~				
Vacation	Name	\sim	Date Range	~	06/01/2016	~	08/31/2016	\sim
							ОК	CANCEL

- 20. Click **OK**.
- 21. Click Save.

Address Options

Address Options Button

The Contact section of a Companies or Persons record stores all the addresses for a company or person. These addresses are available when selecting a **Ship To** or **Bill To** address from an order. Clicking the Address Options button accesses additional address-related features:

Verify Address
🔯 Preview Address Label
🔣 View Address On Map
📰 Setup Default Addresses And Date Ranges
🕵 Add New Address
🖉 Rename Current Address
X Delete Current Address

- Verify Address: If an integrated third-party address verification system, such as Melissa Data, is installed, Aptify will check the accuracy of the address entered.
- Preview Address Label: Shows how the address will look when printed.
- View Address On Map: Displays address in separate tab using Google Maps.
- Setup Default Addresses And Date Ranges: Opens a menu where users can specify when an address should be used automatically.
- Add New Address: Creates a new address location.
- **Rename Current Address**: If a user-created address is selected, this option appears and allows the user to rename the address.
- **Delete Current Address**: If a user-created address is selected, and the user has delete permissions, this option appears and allows the user to delete the address.

Bad Addresses

An address can be labeled as inaccurate using the Bad Address check box.

Users can create views of records with bad addresses and contact the company or person to obtain the correct address.

City, State ZIP		
County		
Country	United States	Bad Address

Assigning Credit Available

For a Persons or Companies record to utilize a Purchase Order payment to order a product they must have credit designated on their Person or Companies record.

- 1. From the persons record, click the **Contact** heading and then select **General** under the **Details** heading.
 - A new section appears and the Contact section is hidden.
- 2. From the Credit Status drop-down list, select Approved.
- 3. In the Credit Limit field, enter \$1,000.00.
 - This sets the maximum amount that can be purchased on credit for orders.
- 4. Click Save.

Details > Genera	l+						
Nickname							
Department							
Supervisor							
Assistant Name							
Referred By						Q	+
Referral Type		\sim		Credit Status	Approved		\sim
GL Order Level	Regular	\sim		Credit Limit	\$1,000.00		
GL Payment Level	Regular	\sim	C	Credit Currency	<u>US Dollar</u>	Q	Î
Pref. Communication	Phone	\sim		AP Vendor			
Preferred Currency	US Dollar	् 🔳					
Old ID							
Old Company ID							
Ranking	• • • • • • •	i i i i i i i i	10	•			

Review Record History

Record History allows a user to see a record's former values, the changes that have been made, when they were made, and the user who made the changes. In this exercise, use the **Record History** feature to view previous versions of a record.

- 1. Open your Persons record, if not already opened.
- 2. From the **Contact** section, at the bottom of the record, change the **Phone** drop-down list to **Cell Phone**.
- 3. In the Cell Phone field, enter 1 555 555-5555

Cel	l Phone	•	\sim		
1	555	555-5555		x	

- 4. Click Save.
- 5. Using the Phone drop-down list, enter a Fax number of 123-123-4567.
- 6. Click Save.
- 7. From the **Data Button bar** at the top of the record, click the **Record History** button.
- 8. Observe the record history window that displays displays, which shows when the record was changed, who made the change, and the details of the change.

🖿 🔁 🚱 C 🔺 More 🕶					
History of Persons	Record ID: 1 [Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners]	×		
VIEW DATA RESTORE					
DATE UPDATED	WHO UPDATED	CHANGES			
12/08/2016 01:17:21 PM	BaselineAdmin	Pref. Bill Addr. changed from Business Address to Billing Address			
12/08/2016 01:16:59 PM	BaselineAdmin	Home Address Record created US Congress changed from (Blank) to 05			
11/21/2016 06:50:56 PM	BaselineAdmin	Pref. Mail Addr. changed from Billing Address to Business Address			
11/21/2016 06:50:26 PM	BaselineAdmin	Pref. Mail Addr. changed from Business Address to Billing Address			
		Relationships Record ID:1			
		First Name changed from Captain to Alexandra 1 - 16 of 16 iten	ns C		

- 9. Users with Admin rights in the system can also click on a prvious Updated row, and click the **Restore** button to revert a record it's previous saved data.
- 10. Click **X** to close the record history window.

Add a Record to Favorites

Favorites enables a user to quickly access any record in Aptify. In this exercise, add a Persons record to Favorites, close the record, and re-open it using the Favorites menu.

- 1. Open your Aiesha Baldwin's record, if not already opened.
- 2. From the Data Control bar, click the More button.
- 3. From the drop-down list, select Add To Favorites.

88		Ð	C			More 🔻	
Name Title	↓ Marketing	Aiesha Senior Dire	ctor	J	B	Changes Print Record	
Company	Danube Pa	rtners				Add To List	T
	Member Typ Company M	e: Membe ember Type	er e: Corpo	rate Memb	er	Record Cloning	
	CES Score:	30				Open in New Window	
Contact -					<	Add To Favorites	

- 4. **Close** the record.
- 5. From the Menu bar, select Favorites.
- 6. Click the Home group from under Favorites.
 - The Aiesha Baldwin's record is automatically added to the Home group.



- 7. Click your **Persons** record to open it.
 - Users can remove a record from Favorites by clicking the **More** button and selecting **Remove From Favorites**.

Cloning Records

The Clone Records feature makes an exact copy of an existing record's top-level data. This is useful when users need to create multiple records that share many of the same values, except for a few minor changes, thus reducing data input time and preventing errors. Subtypes linked to the record will be cloned but linked records will not.

Follow the steps below to clone a record:

- 1. Enter Service Request in the Quick Search field.
- 2. Double-click on the first returned record: Service Request Finance.
- 3. Click the More button at the top of the record, then select Record Cloning.

More 🗸
Changes
Print Record
Add To List
Record Cloning
Open in New Window
Remove From Favorites
Load from Template

4. The new record (clone of the original) opens.

Note: The original record is replaced with the cloned version of the record, indicated by the "(ID: -1) in the record's tab. The record is assigned its actual ID once it is saved.

5. Save and close the record.

0	Service	e Reque	st Finar	nce (ID: ·	-1) X				
8		₿.	Û	Ð	C	4		More 👻	
	Title	Service R	equest F	inance					
	Parent								
	Status	Assigned				~		Priority	High
	Category	Finance				~		Туре	Service Request
	Company	PJNE Ele	ctronics	Co., Ltd.			Q	1	
	Contact	Hill, Rabe	a/PJNE	Electronic	s Co., Ltd.		Q	ÎÎ.	
	Summary	Summar	y of case	e Service R	equest Fin	ance			

Wizards

Creating new records can be accelerated and simplified by using Wizards. Wizards can be accessed via Dashboard buttons for each access. Base Aptify includes many wizards for common tasks, such as creating new orders or memberships, and Developers can create additional wizards as desired..

Wizard Benefits:

- Speed
- Ease of use
- Data integrity
- 1. From the Home dashboard, click the New Order Wizard button.



2. Observe:

- Steps to enter information are designated across top of the window.
- Next and Back buttons are located on the bottom of the window.

	Specify Custome	er Info		Add F	Products	Enter Initial Paymen	t
Order Date	01/19/2016	~		Order Party :	N/A		
Order Type	Regular	~		Order Source	Walk-In	\checkmark	
Ship To			۹ 🗄	Bill To			
nip To Company			Q 🗄	Bill To Company			
	V Billing Same a	is Shipping			Customer Type: Not Available		
Currency Type	US Dollar		\sim				
18-1 × 1	Order Addresses	Ship To Address	V .				
	Line 1						
	Line 2						
	Line 3						
	City, State ZIP			~			
	County						
	Country	United States		V Ba	d Address		
		Ship To Phone	~				
		1	X				

3. Click Cancel - users will complete this wizard in the Orders chapter.

Handling Duplication in Aptify

The Conflict Warning

Within Aptify, two users may work with the same record simultaneously. However, it is possible that the changes made by the users to the record may conflict with each other. Therefore the Conflict message below will launch automatically whenever one user attempts to save a record that has been modified by another user since the form was opened.



Users can then consult the Record History of the record to see what the other user has changed.

VIEW DATA RESTORE			
DATE UPDATED	WHO UPDATED	CHANGES	
03/22/2017 01:27:16 PM	BaselineAdmin	Pref. Mail Addr. changed from Business Address to Home Address Phone Phone changed from 750-9187 to 750-9238	
12/08/2016 01:17:21 PM	BaselineAdmin	Pref. Bill Addr. changed from Business Address to Billing Address	
12/08/2016 01:16:59 PM	BaselineAdmin	Home Address Record created US Congress changed from (Blank) to 05	
11/21/2016 06:50:56 PM	BaselineAdmin	Pref. Mail Addr. changed from Billing Address to Business Address	
11/21/2016 06:50:26 PM	BaselineAdmin	Pref. Mail Addr. changed from Business Address to Billing Address	

The User will then have to reload the record and make the changes again to the record.

Resolving Duplicate Records

An organization can customize Aptify to check for possible duplicates when users save new records. This helps avoid a situation where the same person has multiple records within the system.

By default, Aptify provides a duplicate checking component for the Persons service. This is provided for demonstration purposes so an organization's developers can create their own duplicate-checking components as necessary.

When a message is received about a possible duplicate, choose one of the following options:

Aptify	Persons Duplicate Record Warning
	A potential match was found. (Record ID: 30)
	Click Cancel Save to not save the record and not view the potential matches. Click Save Record to save the record and not view the potential matches. Click the View Duplicates button to view the records that match this form.
	SAVE RECORD CANCEL SAVE VIEW DUPLICATES

Save Record: Click to save the new record without seeing the potential match.

Cancel Save: Click to return to the record without saving.

View Duplicates: Click to view the record or records that may be duplicates of the record a user is attempting to save. If only one potential duplicate exists, the matching record will open. If more than one duplicate exists, Aptify will display a view that lists the matching records. If duplicate records exist, a user can **merge** them into single record - see next page.

Merging Records

If duplicate records are detected already in the database, an administrator level user can merge the records. Merging has the followin characteristics:

- A user can specify which record and fields should survive the merging process
- Any dependent records are automatically linked to the surviving record in chronological order
- A user may not have the ability to merge records, since this is often configured by a system administrator
- Can vary from service to service and from user to user

Follow these steps to merge records:

- 1. Create a view that contains all of the records that a user wants to merge.
- 2. Select the **records** to merge by clicking the checkboxes to the left of the desired records.

308	43	Christina	317-7111	Aaronson	ABB Ltd.
335	1	David	69-36-80-80	Aaronson	Accor
2508		Edward		Aaronson	Lander Corp

- 3. Click on the Views More dropdown and select Merge Records.
- 4. By default, the Merge Tool only shows the fields that have different values across the records selected. To show all of the fields in the record, click the **Show All Fields** button.

			IS I
FIELD NAME	MERGE RESULT	RECORD ID#2508 (75)	RECORD ID#2053 (19)
Phone Area Code			650
Phone			750-9187
Title	Research Manager	Research Manager	Manager, Sales
Address Line 1			910 Southwest Union Avenu
City	Palo Alto	Columbia	Palo Alto
County	Santa Clara	Howard	Santa Clara
State	MD	MD	CA
Zip Code	21044	21044	94301

5. **Drag and drop** the desired fields from the existing record columns to the **Merge Results** column.

Aptify Merging	Tool		
			B 🔂
FIELD NAME	MERGE RESULT	RECORD ID#2508 (75)	RECORD ID#2053 (19)
Phone Area Code			650
Phone	750-9187		750-9187
Title	Research Manager	Research Manager	Manager, Sales
Address Line 1	910 Southwest Union Avenue		910 Southwest Union Avenue
Dity	Palo Alto	Columbia	Palo Alto
County	Santa Clara	Howard	Santa Clara
State	MD	MD	CA
Zip Code	21044	21044	94301
Show All Fields			👝 MERGE 🛛 💥 CANC

- 6. Click on the **Merge** button.
- 7. Click **OK** on the success message.

Summary

- Record information is organized into sections and fields.
- Persons and Companies are the two most frequently used record types.
- The Quick Search can find any record, view, or wizard.
- Record History shows all changes that have been made to a record.
- Favorites allow users to quickly open a record.
- Records can be created by creating a new one from a service, linked field, dashboard button, by cloning, or by using a wizard.
- Users can avoid duplication by utilizing the Conflict Message, Duplication pop-up, and the Merging tool





Working with Views

Objective	4.1
Understanding Views	
Creating List Views	
Using View Filters	4.7
Display Fields	4.10
Sorting Data in Views	4.13
Advanced View Filters	4.14
Additional Filter Options	4.17
Using the Between Operator	4.19
Creating a Multi-Prompt View	
Scheduling Views	4.27
Base Views	4.33
Creating a Chart View	4.35
Creating a Card View	
Creating a Calendar View	4.39
Pivot Grids	4.41
Topic Codes	
Copying Existing Views	
Grouping Data in Views (Desktop)	
Managing and Sharing Views	4.48

Objective

In this chapter, users will learn how to:

- Create and Edit Views
- Sort and Arrange Data in Views
- Understand different types of Views

- Use Views to Compose Bulk Messages
- Manage Views

Understanding Views

Views are the single most important function for finding, analyzing, and communicating data in Aptify. They enable users to locate and display desired groupings of data by creating filtered lists of records. Views are similar to reports in that they display a subset of data, but unique because they are interactive and dynamic. Intertactiv in enabling users to open records and edit/update the data. Dynamic because each time they are run they display the most updated data.

A view can be created and saved in every service and they represent subsets of the records contained in a service. When records in an existing View are updated, the view information reflects the changes.

A user defines filters which narrow the data shown in the view. Once created, views are saved within each user's profile and can be run again by selecting the view. Any view that is valuable to a user should be included as a Favorite and possibly as a part of a Dashboard. One of the fastest ways to access a view is by typing its name into the Quick Search bar and then selecting the result.

Views should be managed through **Shared Folders** that are owned and maintained by a Department/Function Administrator. Users within the department should connect to the Administrator's Shared Folder to access those views. By having a single user own and maintain the views, each user does not have to keep personal copies of the views they use. Following this best practice reduces duplicate views in the database and makes it easier to locate and update each view.. Members of the department should meet periodically to update the folder via the Administrator. Users should NOT be discouraged from creating their own views but should use the folder structure to contain/share the most frequently used views of thier department/function.

See Appendix G - User Profiles for more details on Profiles and Shared Folders.

IMPORTANT NOTE: A user may edit - through Properties - ANY View owned by that user. A user may NOT edit any view they have connected to through a Shared Folder.

To create a basic view:

- 1. Navigate to the service that contains the records you wish to view.
- 2. Provide a unique Name and Description for the View.
- 3. Specify Filters to narrow which records are included in the results.
- 4. Identify which reocrd Fields to display, and in which order.

Other options available will be explained in this chapter.

Major View Types:

List Views

- · A list of records, formatted using columns and rows tod display results
- Users can message, create reports, and bulk update the view results
- Most commonly used type in Aptify

Base Views

- The most flexible and widely used type of View enables users to combine record data from several different services into one location
- Initially created by Administrators to become available List views for end users

Chart Views

- Group data based on specified criteria and displays as a chart or graph
- Excellent for inclusion in dashboards, especially at the executive level

Calendar Views

- Organize records using time data, and displays them on a calendar
- Helpful for date-based functions —Meetings, Committees, Education, etc.

Additional View Types:

Card View

- · Displays record details in a summarized business card-like format
- Users can interact with linked details from results

Pivot Grid

- Option that provides interactive reports to summarize large amounts of data
- Table information expanded/collapsed depending on level of detail desired.

Creating List Views

Aptify lets users locate specific information within their database by employing filters to show only records based on specified criteria.

Follow the steps below to create a filtered view that displays only the following records:

- 1. From the Application menu, click the Customer Management drop-down arrow.
- 2. Select the **Persons** service.



- 3. On the right side of the screen, click the More Actions button.
- 4. From the drop-down list, select Create View.
 - The default record type displayed in the view is determined by the currently selected service, in this case, Persons.



- 5. In the Name field, enter Persons in CA; click the Tab button.
- 6. Add additional information in the **Description** field.
 - Aptify recommends updating the description once the view has been completed. This helps ensure that the description is accurate.
- 7. For View Type, leave the default as List View.

View Properties			8
View Properties		ОК	CANCEL
Name	Persons in CA		
View Type	List View		\sim
General 🗸			
Persons in CA			

- 8. Aptify provides default data fields to display in a view, which can be customized.
- 9. To specify which data fields to filter, display and sort, click the **General** heading to display a drop-down menu.



Using View Filters

Filters are the most commonly configured part of a view. Filters are constructed by creating a logical rule that uses the following elements to select only specific records:

- a) Field
- b) Operator
- c) Value
- 10. From the General drop-down menu, select Filters.

General 👻
General
ず Filters
Fields
2↓ Sorting

- 11. Click the green Add (+) button to add a filter.
 - A list of the selected service's fields display
 - The Persons service is the default Base Views can show multiple services
- 12. Select State from the list by using one of the following methods:
 - Scroll to State and click to select
 - Begin typing the word "State." Aptify narrows the list of possible matches as the letters are entered. Once state appears, click it to select it.

Filters 👻	
B	
State	
Service	Field
2 Persons	State
	DETAILS
2 Persons	Billing State
	Billing State
	DETAILS
2 Persons	Home State
	Home State
	DETAILS

- 13. Once State is selected, the user is taken to the Operator column.
- 14. Select Exactly Matches from the Operator drop-down list.

Filters 🕶	
🛨	
2 Persons State	~ ·
	Exactly Matches
	Contains
	Begins With
	Ends With
	Does Not Contain
	In List
	Is Blank
	Is Not Blank
	Between

- 15. The next column displaysl. Users can then:
 - Type CA (in capital letters) to automatically scroll to the matching drop-down value. Users must then select the value from the list.
 - Scroll through list to find CA and click it to select it.

Filters 🗸	
Persons State Exactly Matches	CA 🗸
	мо
	NJ
	CA
	ÖR
	MN
	MT
	Táchira
	ON
	FL
	AR
	AR

16. At the top-right of the Create View window, click OK to run the view.

NOTE: Even though the Field designation above reads "State", it actually using the person's **Work State**, which is the Person's service default address. A Persons' home state would be designated by the filter field, "**Home State**".

Persons	in CA				
	Z 🗎 🕇 C 🤹	More v			
D ID	FIRST NAME	LAST NAME	COMPANY	TITLE	MEMBER TYPE
1	Aiesha	Baldwin	Danube Partners	Marketing Senior Director	Member
3	Athena	Scott	Akebono Cryogenics Incorporated	Marketing VP	Non-Member
5	Dacey	Yukon	Polyhedron Power Devices	Research Associate	Non-Member
6	Emily	Robinson	VC Osaka Technologies Group, Inc.	Research Associate VP	Non-Member
8	Habika	Harris	X.E. Awaken Components Limited	Research Executive VP	Corporate Member
17	Rabea	Hill	PJNE Electronics Co., Ltd.	Sales Manager	Individual Member
19	Sarah	Burgess	Tester	Sales Senior VP	Non-Member
20	Tadako	Cross	EK Techno Business Inc.	Sales VP	Individual Member
21	Tracey	Lewis	Toadstool Interface Technology Inc 123	Senior Director, Advertising	Student Member
22	Valerie	Rodriquez	Ponderosa Physics	Senior Director, Consulting Services	Individual Member
23	Xia	Robinson	Joist Packaging Technologies Corp.	Senior Director, Customer Support	Non-Member
25	Abraham	Rodriquez	MJG Technology Incorporated	Senior Director, Finance	Student Member
32	Francois	Hale	N Porterhouse Filtration Management AB	Senior VP, Customer Support	Non-Member

- 17. Observe the View Name.
- 18. Add Persons in CA to Favorites menu
 - Click the More button; Add View to Favorites)

From the view results display, users can:

- Sort the results by clicking on a column (field) header
- Observe the number of records returned in the lower-right corner
- Page through the results in the lower-left corner
- Double-click on an individual record to open
- Utilize the More button's functions in top-left

Display Fields

By default, a view displays the fields that are selected under the Fields section in the view's properties. The fields included by default are determined by the system administrator.

The fields section (are we calling them sections or tabs) also controls the order of the fields that are displayed. Remember that shared views can only be edited by the view's owner.

1. From the currently open view's button bar, click the Properties button.

Person	s in C	A		
	\square	₿	Ē	C

2. From the View Properties Screen, click the General button, then select Fields.

General -
General
Tilters
Fields
Sorting

Fields Display

The **RIGHT** column lists the currently selected (displayed) fields.

The LEFT column lists fields that are available, but not shown in the view summary..

View Properties				8
/iew Properties			OK CANC	CEL
Name Per	sons in CA			
View Type List	View		\sim	
Fields 🗸				
Filter List			Filter List	
Name/Company		I	ID	
Prefix		>>	First Name	
Middle Name		>	Last Name	
Suffix		<	Company The name or ID# of the primary company affiliation for	
First and Last			the person.	
Company The name or ID# of the prin	nary company affiliation for		The Person's title within their primary associated company.	
the person.	-, -, -, -		Member Type The Person's member type displays in the list	
Company Name The name or ID# of the prin the person.	nary company affiliation for		Member Type	
Department			Status Name	

Displaying and Hiding Fields

Users can show or hide a field via the following methods:.

FIRST: Select the field:

- Scroll down the list adn click the field to select
- Alternatively, type the name into the texbox and once the field appears, click it to select it.

SECOND: Move the field from one column to another:

- Select the desired field, then click the left or right arrow button
- Alternatively, click and drag the field from one column to the other (Users can also click and drag fields to reorder them.)

Note that the double-arrows move all the fields from one column to the other. This is useful for services with fewer fields.

- 1. On the right side (Displayed Fields), click the second **Member Type** (Company Member). Click the **single** left-facing arrow to remove to the Hidden fields column.
- 2. On the leftt side (Available Fields), click the **State** field. Drag and drop the field to the Displayed Fields column.

3.	Add City	v to the	Displayed	Fields	(using	either	method)	١.
					(/	

ew Properties	
ew Properties	OK CANCE
Name Persons in CA	
View Type List View	\sim
ields 🗸	
Filter List	Filter List
Name/Company	ID
Prefix	>> First Name
Middle Name	> Last Name
Suffix	< Company The name or ID# of the primary company affiliation for the person.
First and Last	Title
Company The name or ID# of the primary company affiliation	The Person's title within their primary associated company.
for the person.	Member Type The Person's member type displays in the list.
Company Name The name or ID# of the primary company affiliation for the person.	Status Name
Department	State
Pref. Mail Addr. The preferred mailing address for the person. The default is Business Address.	City

Reordering Fields

Users can change a field's display location in the view (the order it appears in from left-toright) from the Fields section in the view properties. Use the following steps to re-order the fields in the Persons in CA view.

- 1. From the view properties' Fields section, click and drag the Member Type field so that it is above Company. Repeat the process for the Status Name field. This causes the fields to appear in the view between Last Name and Company.
- 2. Click **OK** to see the view field changes.

	Filter List
	ID
>>	First Name
>	Last Name
<	Member Type The Person's member type displays in the list.
	Company The name or ID# of the primary company affiliation for the person.
	Title The Person's title within their primary associated company.

Sorting Data in Views

The Sorting function enables users to control the order records appear in a view.

- 1. From the current view (Persons in CA), click the **Properties** button.
- 2. Select the General heading. From the drop-down list, select Sorting.
- 3. In the text box below the **Sorting** arrow, type **Last**.
- 4. Click to select Last Name field to select it.

Sorting -	
Last	
Last Name	
Last Pay Date	
Last Dues Amount	

- 5. Repeat the process to sort by both **ID** and **Company**.
 - The icon to the left of the field indicates whether the sort is in ascending or descending order.
 - Default sort is ascending order; a user can click the icon to change to descending.
- 6. Change the fields added to sort in the following order:
 - Last Name ascending
 - **ID** descending
 - Company ascending

Note: The **X** at the right end of the field to remove sorting for that field.

Last Name	X
	*
Company The name or ID# of the primary company affiliation for the person.	K

- 7. Click **OK** to save the changes and return to the view results.
- 8. Scroll through records displayed to confirm they are sorted.

Note: clicking a column heading within a view only temporarily re-sorts the view. If a user closes the view and returns to it later, the view will again be sorted using the settings specified in the Sorting section.

Advanced View Filters

Views can be created using multiple filters and various search operators such as Exactly Matches, Contains, Begins with, etc. The filtered values can be set, users can be prompted for input. The following exercises will provide practice using these options.

Create a View with Multiple Filters

- 1. Open the **Persons in CA** view.
- 2. Open the view properties and change the view's name and description to read "San Francisco Student Members."
- 3. Click the General heading and navigate to the Filters section.
- 4. Click the green Add (+) button to add another filter row.
- 5. Type **Member Type** in the field text box.
 - Select the **Second** displayed Member Type the textual value.
- 6. From the **Operator** drop-down list, select **Exactly Matches**.
- 7. From the Value column select Student Member.

Note: Filter row order can be changed using drag and drop.

- 8. Click the green Add (+) button to add another filter row.
- 9. Type City in the field text box, then click the result to select it.
- 10. From the Operator column, select Exactly Matches.
- 11. In the Value field, type San Francisco.
- 12. Click San Francisco to select it.

Filters -	
24 Persons State Exactly Matches CA	K
22 Persons Member Type Exactly Matches Student Member	■
Persons City Exactly Matches San Francisco	*

13. Click **OK** to return to the view display; note that a new set of results display.
Editing Filter Logic (Using And/Or Operators)

By default, all filters are connected via "AND" logical statements. In other words, a record must meet all of the filter criteria to be included in a view. In the San Fransisco student members view, for example, the person's work state must exactly match CA AND their city must match San Francisco AND their member type must be Student Member. If a record does not meet all three of those requirements, it is not included in the view.

It is important to understand that filter statements are not "building" upon each other. That is, the view is not including people in California AND a separate set of people who are in San Francisco and a third set of people who are Student Members. Rather, each person must be in California and in San Francisco, and a student member.

Users can create views that also use an **OR** operator. The following will change a view to display records where the State is CA and the city is San Francisco <u>or</u> Los Angeles.

- 1. Open the San Francisco Student Members view, click Properties.
- 2. Navigate to the Filters section.
- 3. Click the Filter Logic Button, {x}.

Filters -	
NOT III 22 Persons State Exactly Matches	CA 📑
AND NOT III Persons Member Type Exactly Mar	tches Student Member
NOT III 2 Persons City Exactly Matches S	San Francisco 📑

- 4. Add another filter for City Exactly Matches Los Angeles.
- 5. Move the City Exactly Matches Los Angeles filter line <u>UNDER</u> the City Exactly Matches San Francisco line.
- 6. Click the third AND operator, then select OR from the menu that displays.



- 7. Click **OK** to return to the view results.
- 8. Return to the view's Properties, Filters.
- 9. Delete the Fourth Filter Line City Exactly Matches Los Angeles.

Additional Filter Options

Not Function

Data can be filtered based on excluding a particular value for a field.

- 1. Open the San Francisco Student Members view properties.
- 2. Navigate to the Filters section.
- 3. Click the word **NOT** at the left side of the last filter line.
 - The negated filter row becomes highlighted in red.
 - View will now display student members for all CA cities except San Francisco.

NOT III Persons State Exactly Matches CA	*
AND NOT III Persons Member Type Exactly Matches Student Member	R
NOT III Persons City Exactly Matches San Francisco	R

- 4. Click **OK** and observe the results
- 5. Return to the view properties' Filters section.
- 6. Click the word NOT again to deactivate it.

Is Blank function

The Is Blank function can be used to pull records based on fields that do not contain a value.

- 1. Open the San Francisco Student Members properties.
- 2. Navigate to the Filters section.
- 3. Add another filter rule: Phone Is Blank
 - Use the **first** field value for **Phone** (The Description is "Phone ID")
 - Once Is Blank is chosen, users cannot fill out a Value
- 4. Navigate to the Fields section.
- 5. Add the **Phone** field (again, use the first selection).
- 6. Click OK.
 - The view now displays all San Fransisco student members who do not have a value entered for their phone number.
- 7. Users should observe a return of records that have a **Blank** value for phone.
- 8. Return to the view's properties and remove the Phone Is Blank filter line.

Using the In-List Operator

In this exercise, create a new view to show persons who live in any of three designated states.

- 1. Click the **Persons** tab to return to the persons service. (Use the Applications menu if the tab has been closed.)
- 2. Click More Actions, then select Create View.
- 3. In the Name field, enter States: DC, MD, & VA.
- 4. Navigate to the Filters section.
- 5. Click the green Add (+) button add another filter row.
- 6. From the filter Field name column select (or type), State.
- 7. From the Operator column, select In List.
- 8. Enter **Washington DC**, **Maryland** and **Virginia** to the Value field using one of the following methods:
 - Manually enter the list of states, using the two-letter abbreviation; separate each with a comma: DC, MD, VA
 - For fields that have pre-defined values, users can click the ellipses button to bring up a menu with a drop-down list of possible values.

Filters 🗸	
E 10	
Persons State In List DC, MD, VA	3

- 9. Navigate to the Fields section and add the State field.
- 10. Click **OK** to display the view.
- 11. Click the **State** column header to sort the records alphabetically by state name.

Using the Between Operator

Users can use the **Between** operator to display results that exist between two dates or numbers. Between operators can also be used when creating "prompted"views - prompted views are explained in the upcoming pages.

The Between operator can be extremely helpful in creating views where user wish to search for records by a date range.

Between Operator Using a Static Value

A Between Operator that uses a static value is useful for scenarios where the user only wants vto see records that fall within a particular date range and intends to re-use the same date range repeatedly. For example, a user may wish to see results for a specific week, month, quarter, or year.

- 1. From the Persons service, click More Actions and select Create View.
- 2. In the Name field, enter Member Join Date 2010.
- 3. Navigate to the Fields section.
- 4. Add the Join Date field to the Selected Fields column.
- 5. Navigate to the Filters section.
- 6. Click the **Add** button.
- 7. In the filters Field column, enter Join Date (first field available).
- 8. In the **Operator** column, scroll down to select **Between**.
- 9. In the first date field, enter 1/1/2010.
- 10. In the second date field, enter 12/31/2010.

Filters -		
E		
Persons Join Date Between 01/01/2010	✓ AND 12/31/2010	🗸 ок 🍙 🙀

- 11. Click **OK** which confirms the values entered in the filter row.
- 12. Click **OK** to run the view.
- 13. Click on the More button select Auto-Resize Columns.
- 14. Observe the results of the View showing members who joined during the date range.
 - The Value field now appears as two date fields separated by AND.

Between Operator using a Prompted Value

Between operators can be used in conjunction with prompted views to allow users to easily search for records using a date range. For example, users may wish to look up orders that were placed during a certain time frame, or identify registrations for a certain month.

Follow these steps to create a Prompted View:

- 1. From the Persons service, click More Actions and select Create View.
- 2. In the Name field, enter Member Join Date Prompt.
- 3. Navigate to the Filters section.
- 4. Click the **Add** button.
- 5. In the filters Field column, select Join Date.
- 6. In the **Operator** column, scroll down to select **Between**.
- 7. Leave the Value field blank, then click the Prompt Wizard button.
- 8. The Between Operator is already checked., click Next.

Filters 🗸		
H .		
2 Persons Join Date Between	✓ AND	🗸 ок 💽 📡



- 9. Enter date ranges for 2010 in the From: and To: fields.
 - Entering a default date range makes it easier to quickly modify the search range.

Prompt Wizard		⊗			
Step 2:Default Value and Caption The following values will be options for the user: From: 01/01/2010 To: 12/3/1/2010					
Enter a prompt caption (this will appear on the prompt dialog): From:-Join Date Between					
CANCEL B	iack next finish				

- 10. Click Finish to close the Prompt Wizard.
- 11. Click **OK** to run the prompt view.
- 12. Click Go to search for records using the default dates that have already been entered.
- 13. Change the dates in the prompt to the following:
- 14. Enter 01/01/2010 in the first Join Date field
- 15. Enter 03/31/2010 in the first Join Date field

Member Join Date B	Join Date Prom Between 1/1/2010	ıpt ∽	AND	12/31/2010	~	GO CANCEL
	2 🗎 🕯	C 🕸	More 🔻			
D	FIRST NAME	LAST NAME	E	JOIN DATE		
14	Paige	Byrd		03/12/2010 0	09:28:33 PM	
20	Tadako	Cross		03/20/2010 0	09:28:09 PM	
21	Tracey	Lewis		02/26/2010 0	09:28:33 PM	

16. Click the **GO** button to execute the view, then observe the results.

Creating Prompted Views

Interactive views can be created which prompt users to choose a filter value each time the view is selected. Users will construct a basic, single prompt view in the following exercise and progress to a more complex multi-prompted view in the next exercise

Creating A Prompted View: Text Box

- 1. From the Persons service, click More Actions and select Create View.
- 2. In the Name field, enter Find Company Prompt.
- 3. Navigate to the Filters section.
- 4. In the filters Field column, enter Company.
- 5. Select the fourth value Virtual field tracks the name of the company...etc.
- 6. From the Operator column, select Begins With.
- 7. Leave the Value field blank. Click the Prompt Wizard button.

Filters 🗸
22 Persons Company Begins With

8. On the following screen, leave Text Box (the default) selected.



9. Click Next.

- 10. Leave the **Default Value box** blank.
 - The Prompt Caption is populated based on the filters specified.
 - User can enter a default value if desired.



- 11. Click Finish.
 - The wizard automatically completes the Value field.



- 12. Click **OK** to return to complete the view.
 - Observe the prompt input fields display at the top-left of the view.
- 13. In the **Prompt** box, enter **Danube**, and then click **GO**.
 - Observe the displayed results.

Find Company Prompt Company: Danube GO CANCEL					
📙 🗹 🗎 🗰	C 🔯 More ◄				
D ID FIRST NAME	LAST NAME	COMPANY			
🗌 1 Aiesha	Baldwin	Danube Partners			
109 Jessica	Rodriquez	Danube Partners			
342 John	Lee	Danube Partners			

- For text-based prompts, use **Begins With** for the operator. This helps to improve search result times. Using a Contains search is not recommended as it must check more information in the database which can take more time to complete.
- Enter default values of "<field name>" for text-based fields and "0" for numberbased fields to ignore the search parameter. This is useful when only searching for data using a particular field and not all the prompted fields.

Creating A Prompted View: Drop-Down List

- 1. From the Companies service, click More Actions and select Create View.
- 2. In the Name field, enter Company by Type.
- 3. Navigate to the Filters section.
- 4. Click green Add button to add a filter row. Note that the default service is Companies.
- 5. From the Filters Field column, select Company Type.
- 6. From the **Operator** column, select **Exactly Matches**.
- 7. Click the Prompt Wizard button.
- 8. Select the **Drop-Down** option and click **Next**.
 - If a **List Box** were chosen, the user would ONLY be able to choose from a list of values. In a Drop Down, the user can type another, non-listed value into prompt.
- 9. Click the blank area beneath the Value heading.
- 10. Enter the values for the drop-down list in the fields provided. Users will need to click in the next available spot once a value is entered to activate.

Prompt Wizard	8
Step 2: Enter Listed Values Enter a default value (optional):	
VALUE	
Retail	
Media	
Education	
CANCEL BACK NEXT FINISH	

• Enter Retail, Media, and Education (one per line).

- 11. Click Next to continue.
- 12. In the default value box, enter **Retail**.
- 13. Delete Exactly Matches from Prompt Caption, then click Finish.
- 14. Click OK
- 15. Click GO.
- 16. Observe the displayed records.

Creating a Multi-Prompt View

Multi-Prompted views are the most effective and commonly used views in Aptify. They enable users to search for data using multiple values. Users can then change the values enter and re-run the view to get an updated set of results.

Multi-Prompted views may be combined with static filters, drop-down lists, various operators, and advanced filter logic to create extremely powerful, flexible searches.

In this exercise, create a Find Persons prompted view that uses the ID, Last name, Company, Email, and Zip Code.

- 1. From the Persons service, click More Actions and select Create View.
- 2. In the Name field, enter Persons Search.
- 3. Navigate to the Filters section.
- 4. In the filters Field column, enter Last Name.
- 5. In the Operator column, enter Begins With.
 - Begins With is useful as a prompt operator because Aptify does not always have to check the entire value to determine if there is a match, as is the case with the Contains operator.
- 6. Leave the Value field blank, then click the Prompt Wizard button.
- 7. Keep Textbox selected and click Next.
- 8. In the Enter a default value field, enter <LastName>.
 - Using the angle brackets <> to encase a value causes the system to ignore the prompted field when doing the search. This prevents the search from accidentally including any record that contains any value at all, which occurs if the field prompted field is left blank.
 - For example, if prompting for the First Name and Last Name, and only a First Name is entered, the system will attempt to find all records that match the First Name and ignore the Last Name search.
 - If the angle brackets are not used, and only a First Name is entered, the system will attempt to find people with the First Name and **anyone with any value entered** for Last Name—which is not the intended search and would return almost every record in the system.
 - For a numeric field, use a default of 0 (zero).
- 9. In the Enter a prompt caption field, delete the words, Begins With and add a colon to the Last Name.
 - Keeping the operator in the Prompt Caption is unnecessary for most prompts since users should assume most prompts are Begins With searches..
- 10. Click Finish.

- 11. Repeat the steps above to add three more pormpted filter lines for:
 - ID (numeric), Company (text), Email (text) and Zip Code (text)
- 12. Click the Filter Logic icon; change all the ANDs to ORs.
 - Changing the ANDs to ORs provides a more inclusive search; Aptify will return results for any record that matches any of the criteria entered. This is typically used when searching using one value at a time. For example, searching for Aiesha Baldwin will not return only persons named Aiesha Baldwin, but anyone with a first name of Aiesha and anyone with a last name of Baldwin.
 - Users can change AND and OR operators to create searches that look for specific information and employ Between operators to easily create date-based prompts..

View Pro	operties		ОК	CANCEL
	Name	Persons Search		
	View Type	List View 🗸		
Filters	•			
	{x}	0		
NOT	NOT III	22 Persons Last Name Begins With		
	} CONTRO	LTYPE={TEXT} ENTITYNAME={Persons} FIELDNAME={LastName}>Last Name:		
	NOT III	22 Persons ID = ID:		*
l or f	NOT III	22 Persons Company Begins With		
∫	} CONTRO	LTYPE={TEXT} ENTITYNAME={Persons} FIELDNAME={Company}>Company:		*
1	NOT III	22 Persons Email Begins With		
∫	} CONTRO	LTYPE={TEXT} ENTITYNAME={Persons} FIELDNAME={Email}>Email:		x
l ~ J	NOT III	22 Persons Zip Code Begins With		
	} CONTRO	LTYPE={TEXT} ENTITYNAME={Persons} FIELDNAME={ZipCode}>Zip Code:		K

- 13. Navigate to Fields section add Email and Zip Codes to the Selected Fields column.
- 14. Click **OK** to execute the view, then test the prompts.

Persons Search Last Name: Baldwin	ID: 0	Company: <company></company>	Email: <email></email>	Zip Code: <zip code<="" th=""><th>> 60</th></zip>	> 60
D D D C =	🐼 More 🕶				
D FIRST NAME	LAST NAME	COMPANY	TITLE	MEMBER TYPE	MEMBER TYPE
1 Aiesha	Baldwin	Danube Partners	Marketing Senior Director	Member	Corporate Member
○ •• ••••	Balanda	·····	A	N 1	·····

- 15. Test the prompts.
- 16. Add the view to your Favorites.

Scheduling Views

Users can set up a view to automatically output its contents on a recurring basis. These contents can be emailed to recipients as an attachment, saved as an Excel file or Crystal Reports file, or printed using a network printer. This feature is particularly useful for getting information from Aptify to individuals who may not have access to the system and its views

For example, a sales associate could create a view that displays all the orders taken during the last week and have that view's contents be emailed to their manager every Friday at 5:00 PM.

- 1. Open San Francisco Student Members from Quick Search. Open View Properties.
- 2. Click on the **Scheduling** section.



- 3. Do not check the chedule This View To Run Automatically checkbox.
- 4. In the Frequency Type drop-down list, enter Weekly.
- 5. In the Start Date field, enter the date for next Monday.

Schedule -			
	Delete the task if it is	s not scheduled to	o run again.
Frequency Type	Weekly	~	
Start Date	01/18/2016	~	Start Time 9:00 AM
End Date		\sim	
- Schedule Task Wee	kly		Repeat Task
Every 1 Very 1 V	Week(s) Weds Thur Sun		Every 1 Hours V Until 9:00 AM

- 6. Click the Schedule heading, then select Output Options.
- 7. In the Output Mode drop-down list, leave Email selected.
- 8. In the Message System field, enter Outlook Mail.
- 9. Click the **Output Type** drop-down list to see options, but leave **View** selected.
- 10. On the bottom-right of the window, observe the From Email, Subject, and Body options.
- 11. Click the Output Options heading, then select Advanced Scheduling.
- 12. The view scheduling process should be executed using a separate **Application Server** for technical and performance reasons. These field settings will contain defaults values as determined by your system administrator.

Scheduling -	n Automatically		
Output Options -			
Output Mode Email Output Type View Directory File Name	Message System		•
Append Da	te and Time to File Name	From Email	
	IN PLACE EDIT 🛣 🔺 👢 🐥	Subject	
EMAIL		TYPE Body	
	No iten	ns to display	

- 13. From the View Properties screen, click Cancel.
 - Scheduling NOT processed in training class.

Composing a Bulk Message

Aptify has the ability to generate unique, personalized email messages to persons in the database; this feature is known as Bulk Messaging. Bulk Messaging is extremely effective for sending renewal notices, registration information, past due balance information, and other common tasks. Note that it should not be used for large marketing communications; these are typically handled by third party platforms.

In this exercise, draft a sample bulk message that can be sent to the persons whose records appear in a filtered view.

- 1. Run the San Francisco Student Members view.
- 2. From the view More button drop-down list, click the Messaging option.



- 3. The Aptify Bulk Messaging window displays.
- 4. In the Subject field; enter Order HistoryOrder.
- 5. Click the **Body** heading.
 - Messages can be composed in either HTML or Plain Text format.



6. Click the Insert Field button.

- 7. In the Category field, click the drop-down arrow; select Name.
- 8. Select FirstLast.
- 9. Type Dear in front of FirstLast.

Category: Name	\sim	OK	CANCEL	
NameWCompany				
Name With Company(if company is linked)				
Prefix				
FirstName				
First Name				
MiddleName				
Middle Name				
LastName				
Last Name				
Suffix				
FirstLast				
Virtual Field - First Last				

- 10. Your message field should now read: "Dear <<FirstLast>>". Enter a colon after "<<FirstLast>>"; click the **Enter** key twice to move your cursor to the line below.
- 11. Type, Please review your Order History.
- 12. Click the Insert Part button.
- 13. Click to select Order History Part.
- 14. Click OK.
- 15. Select Addressing.
 - The To fields are automatically completed using each person's email address.
- 16. Observe the **From Name** and **From Email** and **Reply To** fields this is where the user could enter their or their department's name and email.

Field 🗸
Email1
None
None
aptify.information@aptify.com

17. Click the Addressing heading, then select Delivery. Observe the drop-down options.

Delivery 🗸		
Message System	Dot Net Mail	\sim
Message Source	Persons	\sim
Start Delivery At	01/18/2016 11:37:28 AM	\sim

- 84F84HFB 11/11 Aptify Bulk Messaging \mathbf{Z} Message Preview Byrd_Quillan@demodata.aptify.com To: Byrd_Quillan@demodata.aptify.com WJackson@demodata.aptify.com CC: BrianJones2100@demodata.aptify.com Lowe_Mason@demodata.aptify.com BCC: EMay@demodata.aptify.com AndrewWalker1339@demodata.aptify.com Subject: Message Body Plain Text Body Dear Quillan Byrd, Please review your Order History.
- 18. Click the **Preview** button, to review your message.

- 19. On the left, click email addresses to view the uniquely generated message to that person.
- 20. Click the X in the upper-right corner of the Messaging Dialog box to close. **Do Not Send the Message** in training class.

Attaching Reports

Crystal Reports[®] can be attached to a Bulk Message. This enables users to create a view for a recipient that they wish to send a particular report to as an attachment such as, Invoice, Name Tent, Badge, Activity Consolidation, etc.

The Report is selected from the Attachments tab and the appropriate Report is sent to the individual user with only their relevant data.

- 1. Click the **Reports** tab of the **Bulk Message**.
- 2. Click the scroll bar to the right to review various report options available.

Aptify Bulk Messaging			
5			
Subject Order History			
Reports 🗸			
Export Format Portable Document Forma	t		
Avery 5160 - 3 Up Labels	Report of Person Information		
Meeting Tents Report	Label report with prompt		

Note: Only certain reports will be available from views of particular services. For instance, Invoice Reports are only available when a View of Orders is created.

3. Click the X button in the upper right corner of the window to close the Aptify Messaging dialog without sending the message.

Do **NOT** click the Send Messages button.

Base Views

Base Views are pre-created SQL views that combine fields from multiple services into one selectable view setting. Base Views provide users unlimited cross-reference possibilities across the entire system.

When creating a new view and selecting an existing Base View, users have access to the data and fields from multiple services designated in that Base View.

In the example below, select from a persons service view, the **PersonsWithCommittees** Base View. Users will consequently see <u>four services represented</u> in the Fields tab and in the subsequent results when the view is run:

- Persons
- Committees
- Committee Terms
- Member Records

Once users develop a competency in views, they can request that Base Views be built by Administrators and populated as a Base View values for selection when creating a new view.

- 1. Create a new view -- Persons service; Create View.
- 2. In the Name field, enter Committees & Persons (BASE VIEW).
- 3. Click the General tab; click the Configuration tab.
- 4. On the following screen, in the Entity Base View field, begin typing persons; from the drop-down, select PersonsWithCommittees.
 - Alternatively, click the magnifying glass icon at far right, from the Advanced Search screen, click Find, click to select the base view; then click Select.

View Properties	
View Properties	
Name	Committees & Persons (BASE VIEW)
View Type	E List View
Advanced > C	onfiguration 🗸
Entity Base	e View PersonsWithCommittees Q
	Warning! Changing the Base View will clear any settings you have configured up to this point.
Form Ter	nplate
Record Ter	nplate
Preview Ter	nplate 🔍 🕂
	Folder 🔍 🕂
	Show Preview Pane

- 5. Click the activated Advanced > Configuration Fields tab.
- 6. Observe the multiple fields available.

- 7. There are four **Services** represented in the **Fields**:
 - NameWCompany Persons Service
 - Term Title Committee Terms Service
 - TermRole Term Member Service
 - Committee Name Committee Service

Fields 🗸		
Filter List		Filter List
Prefix		ID
First Name	>>	Name/Company
Middle Name	>	Address Line 1
Last Name	<	City
Suffix	<	State
First Last		Zip Code
Company ID The name or ID# of the primary company affiliation for		Country
the person.		Phone Area Code
Company The name or ID# of the primary company affiliation for the person.	l	Phone Numbers for the percent's telephone
Department		Phone Extension
Title The Person's title within their primary associated company.		Email The label on the field depends on what is selected in the list
Address ID		Member Type
Address Line 2		Term Rank
Address Line 3		Term Title
Address Line 4		Term Role
County		Region
Phone ID		Term Member Start Date
Phone Country Code		Term Member End Date
Nickname		Term
Gender		Committee Name
Mail Exclude		

- 8. Select the Filters tab the same Fields are represented under the Filter Fields column.
- 9. Add a Prompted filter for Term Begins With 2012 (Default Value).
- 10. Click OK
- 11. Run the view with default value.
- 12. Observe results scroll to right to see Committee, Committee Term fields/columns.

Creating a Chart View

Aptify can visually represent data in a chart format, making it easy for users to interpret the information. Follow the steps below to create a Chart View:

- 1. Create a new view -- Persons; More Actions; Create View.
- 2. Name the view, Membership in CA by City.
- 3. From the View Type drop-down list, select Chart.
- 4. Scroll, click to select the Pie Chart 3D type.

View Properties				8
View Properties			ок	CANCEL
Name	Individual Membership in CA by C	Sity		
View Type	Chart	~		
Chart 🗸				
Chart Type 🗸				
Column Cha	art 3D	Nrea Chart 3D		
A column chart shor time or compares m arranged horizontal vertically to emphas	we the changes in a data series over ultiple items. Types of items are ly and data values are plotted lize variation over time.	An area chart emphasizes the amount of change over period of time. An area chart also shows the relations of parts to a whole by displaying the total of the plott values. An area chart is a form of a line chart, but the area between the horizontal axis and the line connect to be where the plotted who color. This make it easy to be a series overlap.	ing ayy	
Line Chart 3	D	🌍 Pie Chart 3D		I
A line chart plots da spaced intervals an to emphasize the re	ta pointa in a series using evenly- d connects the data points with a line lationships between the data points.	A pie chart shows the size of items that make up a da series proportional to the total of the items in the avrice A pie chart shores shows a single data series and is useful for determining which items in the series in/are most significant.	ta 65.	

5. Click the Chart Type tab. Under the Grouping tab, click the Primary tab.



6. In the Group By field, start typing City - select.

Chart 🗸	
Grouping > Primary 🗸	
Group By	City
Function	None
Display As	
Customize Grouping Method	
Grouping SQL	City

- 7. Click the **Grouping > Primary** tab; from the drop-down, select **Display**.
- 8. Verify that the checkbox, Show Legend, is selected.

Display 🗸		
Chart Legend		
Right 🗸		
X Axis	Y Axis	Z Axis
🗸 Show Axis	V Show Axis	Show Axis
🗸 Show Major Gridline	V Show Major Gridline	🚺 Show Major Gridline
Show Minor Gridline	Show Minor Gridline	Show Minor Gridline
Drill Down View		Q 🗄

- 9. Click the **Display** tab; from the drop-down, select the **Title** tab.
- 10. In the Top field, enter Membership % in CA by City as the title of the Chart.

Title ▼		
Тор	Membership % in CA by City	
Left		
Bottom		
Right		

- 11. Click the Title tab; from the drop-down, select the Summary tab.
- 12. In the Summary Function field, click the drop-down, select Count.

Summary 🗸			
Summary Function	Average	~	
Summary Field	ID	\checkmark	
	Custom Summary Function		
Summary SQL	COUNT(*)		

- 13. Click the Chart tab to select the Filters tab.
- 14. Designate filters to match those in the following figure.

Filters 🗸
22 Persons State Exactly Matches CA
2 Persons Member Type Exactly Matches Individual Member

15. Click **OK** to see the displayed 3D Pie chart:



- 16. Click a section of the pie graph to see the individual records for that section.
- 17. Click the Chart tab, top left, to return to the chart view.
- 18. Close the view.

Creating a Card View

Card Views display record information summarized in an index card like format whose content is determined by selected fields. This enables a user to view a number of records with summarized and linked details in a panel format as compared to a list or chart.

In this exercise, users will create a card view based on persons' Composite Engagement Score (CES) in ascending order:

- 1. Create a new view in the Persons service. Name it, Persons by CES card view.
- 2. Change the View Type to Card View.
- 3. From the **Filters**, specify a Filter row of **CES** > 25.
- 4. From the Fields, add display fields CES and Photo.
- 5. Sort by CES, ascending.

View Properties		
Name	Persons CES >25	
View Type	Card View	
Filters 🗸		
H .		
Persons CES Score > 25		

- 6. Click OK.
- 7. Observe the results.



Creating a Calendar View

Calendar views display records representing events or transactions in a calendar according to the date and time at which they occur. Calendar views are very flexible; users can organize them by either day, week, month, or year. If a user sets the view in day or work week mode, they can select one of several time intervals ranging between one minute to one hour.

- 1. Create a new view using the Contact Log service; More Actions; Create View.
- 2. Name the view, Incomplete Follow up Items.
- 3. From the View Type drop-down, select Calendar.
- 4. From the Mode drop-down, select Month.
- 5. From the First Visible Date drop-down, select Manual.
- 6. From the Date drop-down, select 11/09/2014.

View Properties		
Name Incomple	ete Follow Up Items	
View Type Calendar		~
Calendar 🗸		
General 🗸		
Mo	ode Month	\checkmark
First Visible D	ate Manual	\checkmark
D	ate 11/09/2014	\checkmark

- 7. Click the General tab; select the Data tab.
- 8. From the Start Date Field drop-down, select Next Contact Date.
- 9. From the Duration Mode drop-down, select Standard.
- 10. From the Title Field drop-down, select ID.

Data 🗸		
Start Date Field	NextContactDate	~
Duration Mode	Standard	~
Std. Duration	0.5	
Title Field	ID	\sim

- 11. From the Calendar tab, from the drop-down
- 12. Click Filters.

- 13. Enter and select **Date/Time** in the field box.
- 14. For the **Operator**, select **Is Not Blank**.
- 15. Add a second Filter row,
- 16. Status, Exactly Matches, Incomplete.

Filters -
E {} ©
Contact Log Date/Time Is Not Blank
Contact Log Status Exactly Matches Incomplete

17. Click **OK** to display the View.



Pivot Grids

Pivot Grids are interactive tables used to summarize numerical data. Users Rotate (or *pivot*) rows and columns to view different summaries of data. A Separate Pivot Grid tab appears in View and users use the Properties dialog to specify settings.

Users can also move rows and columns to change the organization of the data cells. This is known as "pivoting."

🔯 C 🍾			
FIELDS	COLUMNS	Drop	Drop Column Fields Here
^ t, ID	Drop Column Fields Here	Fields	
∧ ↓ Order Date (No Time)		Here	
▲ ↓ ShipToName	= ROWS	Drop	
▲ ↓ Ship To Addr Line 1	Drop Rows Fields Here	Fields	
▲ ↓ Ship To City		Here	
∧ ↓ Ship To State			
∧ ↓ Ship To Zip Code	∑ MEASURES		
∧ ↓ BillToCompany	Drop Data Fields Here		
∧ ↓ ShipToCompany			
∧ ↓ BillToName			
∧ ↓ OrderType			
∧ ↓ Order Status			
▲ ↑ Tax Jurisdiction			
∧ ↓ Total			
∧ ↓ Balance			
▲ ↓ Line1_ProductName			
▲ ↓ Line1_ProductCategory			
∧ ∑ Measures			

The screen shot above illustrates how the organization of data changes when users move (or pivot) row headings.

In the top image, Order totals (in white) are organized based on the **BillToCompany** name (at the far left). By expanding a company heading (as in the case of Danube Partners), a user can further break down the Order totals based on specific products ordered by the company (Products are identified by their Product ID number in this example). Danube Partners ordered \$100 worth of products on 12/4/2003, of which \$25 was for Product 9.

The bottom image shows the same data except the BillToCompany heading has been moved to the right of the Order Line ProductID heading. Now instead of showing Order Totals based on Company, the table displays Order Totals based on the **Products Ordered**. Rearranging the two headings changed the format of the data and provides new insight into the data. With the new layout, a user can now determine that \$125 worth of Product 9 was sold on 12/4/ 2003, of which \$25 worth was purchased by Danube Partners.

NOTE: Most Pivot Grids can be replaced by Base Views. Base Views are much more effective than Pivot Grids as they use considerably less processing power, are more easily displayed in dashboards, and provide more data management options.

Topic Codes

Topic Codes provide a method to collect **information about the areas of interest of customers/members**. Topic codes can be used effectively for:

- Customer/member profiling
- Driving personalized Web site content
- Target marketing
- Determining viability of new product/service offerings

The default Aptify installation provides a **Topic Codes tab on the following forms: Organi**zations, Companies, Employees, Persons, and Products. Multiple records, such as Persons and Products, linked to a particular Topic Code provides a powerful and flexible relationship useful when targeting marketing campaigns.

Although topic codes are most commonly associated with people, companies, products, or news articles, their flexibility allows them to link to any type of record in Aptify. Because topic codes can be associated with any service, records in new custom modules can also link to topic codes, providing virtually unlimited possibilities.

Only Administrators have the ability to add or edit Topic Code records. Once an Administrator has added/edited Topic Codes for a particular service, the available codes appear under the Topic Codes tab. Those topic codes can then be either checked by an End User who is in communication with a client, or by the client themselves via an on-line profile.

In the the Persons form displayed below, there are Top-Level Topic Code categories. Each of these categories can have multiple sub-topics opened by expanding the left-hand arrow.

Details > Topic Codes ↓			
Topic Code Display Mode: O Flat View	Tree View		
V Business			
✓ ✓ Accounting and Finance			
Financial Audit			
Revenue Recognition			
Internal Controls			
Tax Planning			
Marketing			
∧ Sales			
International Business			
∧ Law			
∧ Science			
Contraction Engineering			
✓ ✓ Sports			
Tennis			
🕢 Baseball			
Boxing			

Creating Views of Topic Codes

To Create a view of all Persons, Companies, Products, or Orders that have a topic code selected, users must go to the desired service to create the view.

The example below explains how to create a view of all persons that have selected Accounting and Finance, a sub-category topic code of Business, in the Persons service.

- 1. Persons More Actions Create View.
- 2. Enter Accounting and Persons TC in the Name field.
- 3. Click on the General dropdown and select Filters.
- 4. Click on the Add Filter button.
- 5. Type **Topic Code** in the text box.
 - This automatically displays the topic codes service and makes its fields available to cross-filtering.
- 6. Select the **Topic Code** field (Topic Code ID_Name).

Filters 🗸
Topic Codes Topic Code Exactly Matches Accounting and Finance

- 7. Click OK.
- 8. Observe the View Results.

Accounting and Finance TC				
. (Z 🗎 🖬 C 🕸	More 👻		
D ID	FIRST NAME	LAST NAME	COMPANY	
13	Nadia	Miller	Franchi S.p.A.	
26	Alexander	O'Neal	Gourmet Lanchonetes	
52	Alyssa	Beck	J Communications Division	
65	Odessa	Tate	Océano Atlántico Ltda.	
91	Reginald	Holland	R.A.I. Display Technology Co., Inc.	
104	Fabiola	Tate	Washington DC Chapter	
130	David	Neal	Bólido Comidas preparadas	

Note - Users will **NOT** see any reference to the topic code selected in view results. It is important to name the View of Topic Codes after the topic code being filtered by as a cross reference.

Copying Existing Views

Users may wish to copy views in order to make subtle edits to the fields that display, create additional filters, or simply inherit existing, complex filters and pre-selected fields to ensure accuracy while adding other aspects to the copied view.

- 1. Type Find Orders in the Quick Search and select.
- 2. Click on the More Actions dropdown from the Find Orders.
- 3. Select Copy View.

NEW PERSONS	MORE ACTIONS 🤝
Connect To Share	d Folder
Create New Folde	r
Create View	
Delete Views	
Copy View	

- 4. From the Copy View dialog box, click on the Select View dropdown.
- 5. Select Active Committee Members (Committees).
- 6. Delete the word, "Copy -" from the View Name field.
- 7. Add your initials to the End of the View Name.
 - This indicates this view is a copy of an existing view for future reference.

Copy View			×
Select View	Active Committee Members(Committees)		\sim
Select Folder	None		\sim
View Name	Active Committee Members (DOC)		
	Copy the view's Scheduling information		
		COPY VIEW CAN	CEL

- 8. Click the Copy View button.
- 9. The View now displays as a personal owned view outside the folder structure.



- 10. Users can now access and edit the view.
- 11. Add the Find Orders (Copy) to Favorites.

Grouping Data in Views (Desktop)

Users can group records in a list view by common characteristics, and display a summary of the grouped records, which makes it easier to interpret and analyze data. For example, a user can group similar Orders records together, and then display the total value of those orders.

This is an extremely valuable function to End Users since it avoids most reasons to export data to Excel for quantifying purposes, instead, users can aggregate most data and view the results from a View in Aptify.

This option is currently available for configuration in Desktop Aptify, but once created, users can interact with, and view the results in, Aptify Web.

- 1. Open Aptify Desktop.
- 2. Navigate to the **Orders** service.
- 3. Right click on the Orders service from the Navigation bar.
- 4. Select Create View from the menu.
- 5. Enter Orders per Company in the Name field.
- 6. Select the Grouping tab.
- 7. Click the Enable Grouping checkbox.
- 8. From the Field drop-down, select Company.
- 9. From the **Summary Position** drop-down, select **BelowData** to indicate the summary is to display in the view below the count by company.

X View Properties - 'Find Revenue by Person OR Company'
<u>G</u> eneral Filters ✓ Fiel <u>d</u> s ✓ <u>S</u> orting ✓ Fo <u>r</u> mat <u>H</u> ierarchy <u>P</u> aging Auto <u>R</u> efresh <u>C</u> onfiguration <u>Grouping ✓ A</u> dvanced (SQL)
✓ Enable Grouping
Field OrderStatus
Caption
Summary Position BelowData

- 10. Select the **Fields** tab.
- 11. Expand the View Properties window.
- 12. Select the **ID** row by clicking once.

- 13. Use the bottom scroll bar, move to the <u>far right</u> of **Selected Fields** section and find the **Aggregate Function** column.
- 14. Click the Aggregate Function cell in the Grand Total row, then click the down arrow.
- 15. Select the **Sum** value.
- 16. Click the Aggregate Function cell in the Balance row, then click the down arrow.
- 17. Select the **Sum** value.
- 18. Ensure only the displayed fields in the screenshot our present
 - Select fields not in Selected Fields section of screenshot by using Shift Key and selecting as in Excel
 - Then click the left-facing, centrally located arrow

Selected Fields:									
Field	Data Type	Display Name	Hyperlink	Target Field	Target Entity	Show Decrypted	Aggregate Functi		
OrderStatus	Text	Order Status		Name	Order Status Typ		~		
OrderDate	Date/Time	Order Date							
BillToName	Text	Bill To Name	✓	FirstLast	Persons				
BillToCompany	Text	Bill To Company	✓	Name	Companies				
Line1_ProductCa	Text	Line1_ProductCategory							
Line1_ProductNa	Text	Line1_ProductName							
OrderType	Text	OrderType		Name	Order Types				
GrandTotal	Number	Total					Sum		
Balance	Number	Balance					Sum		
ID	Number	ID							
ShipToCompany	Text	Ship To Company	✓	Name	Companies				
ShipToName	Text	Ship To Name	✓	FirstLast	Persons				
CurrencyTypeID	Number	CurrencyTypeID		ID	Currency Types				

- 19. Click on the Filters Tab.
- 20. Add a Prompted View: Bill To Company Exactly Matches (Text Box Prompt).
- 21. Add a second filter: Order Status Exactly Matches Shipped.

🗡 View Properties - 'Find Revenue by Person OR Company' 📃 🗕 💌								
<u>C</u> onfiguration <u>G</u> rouping → <u>A</u> dvanced (SQL) <u>G</u> eneral <u>Filters</u> → <u>Fields</u> → <u>Sorting</u> → <u>Format</u> <u>H</u> ierarchy <u>Paging</u> Auto <u>R</u> efresh Scheduling								
FilterID	Service	Field	Operator	Value				
2	Orders	Bill To Company	Begins With	<prompt default<="" td=""></prompt>				
3	Orders	Order Status	Exactly Matches	Shipped				
4	Orders							
Filter Logic	FilterLogic							
1 AND 2								
Hide Advanced Reset FilterLogic Prompt Wizard 🖌 Optimize Sub-Queries								
Save Template OK Cancel								

22. Click OK.

- 23. Enter the Ottoman in the Company Prompt Box that displays.
- 24. Observe the results in **Desktop**.
 - A list of all Orders for Ottoman is grouped by Shipped Status
 - Both the Total and Balance fields are summed below those columns

Order Status	Order Date	Bill To Name	Bill To Company	Line1_ProductCategory	Line1_ProductName	OrderType	Total	Balance	
	4/1/2010	Jessica Hale	<u>Ottoman</u>	Desks	Secretary Desk	Regular	\$2,520.00	\$2,520.00	
	4/8/2010	<u>Xia Johnson</u>	<u>Ottoman</u>	Standards	Samp co Standards Volume I	Regular	\$192.00	\$96.00	
	2/28/2010	<u>Xia Johnson</u>	<u>Ottoman</u>	Shirts	Sampco Golf Shirt	Regular	\$130.05	\$130.05	
	2/28/2010	Gary Carter	<u>Ottoman</u>	Chairs	Side Chair	Regular	\$720.00	\$720.00	
	2/28/2010	Yale Wade	<u>Ottoman</u>	Sweaters and Sweatshir	Samp co Merino Wool Sweater	Regular	\$216.75	\$216.75	
	2/28/2010	Pablo Harris	<u>Ottoman</u>	Tables	Rectangular Conference Table	Regular	\$8,925.00	\$8,925.00	
	2/28/2010	Jessica Hale	<u>Ottoman</u>	Sweaters and Sweatshir	Samp co Merino Wool Sweater	Regular	\$926.25	\$926.25	
	7/18/2007	Baka Lambert	<u>Ottoman</u>	Shirts	Sampco Tank Top	Regular	\$30.00	\$15.00	
	7/18/2007	Pablo Harris	<u>Ottoman</u>	Memberships	Individual Membership	Regular	\$2,700.00	\$1,350.00	
	7/18/2007	Edward King	<u>Ottoman</u>	Mugs and Glasses	4oz Samp co Glass	Regular	\$1,569.40	\$784.70	
Shipped	7/18/2007	Jessica Hale	<u>Ottoman</u>	Exhibits	2008 Sampco Exhibition	Regular	\$2,880.00	\$1,440.00	
	7/18/2007	Yale Wade	<u>Ottoman</u>	Exhibits	2008 Sampco Exhibition	Regular	\$3,200.00	\$1,600.00	
	7/18/2007	<u>Xia Johnson</u>	<u>Ottoman</u>	Educational Seminars	Executive Succession Planning	Regular	\$280.00	\$140.00	
	7/18/2007	Valerie Garner	<u>Ottoman</u>	Magazines and Journals	Sampco Quarterly	Regular	\$252.00	(\$10.00)	
	9/4/2013	Baka Lambert	<u>Ottoman</u>	Educational Seminars	Financial Planning Update Fall 2013	Regular	\$170.62	\$170.62	
	1/15/2013	Baka Lambert	<u>Ottoman</u>	Books	The History of Sampco	Regular	\$253.00	\$0.00	
	9/6/2013	Jessica Pintaro	<u>Ottoman</u>	Exhibits	XYZ Expo	Regular	\$7,500.00	\$0.00	
	4/16/2014	Baka Lambert	<u>Ottoman</u>	Educational Seminars	XYZ Course	Regular	\$600.00	\$600.00	
	4/16/2014	Baka Lambert	<u>Ottoman</u>	Educational Seminars	XYZ Orientation	Regular	\$400.00	\$400.00	
	4/27/2015	Baka Lambert	Ottoman	Hats	Samp co Baseball Hat	Regular	\$19.95	\$0.00	
	2/14/2017	Baka Lambert	Ottoman	Memberships	Corporate Membership	Regular	\$1,500.00	\$0.00	
Order Status: Shipped							34985.02	20024.37	

- 25. Re-open Aptify Web.
- 26. Locate the view under Persons.
- 27. Run the View.
- 28. Observe the Totals aggregated at the bottom of the Total and Balance fields.

BILL TO COMPANY	LINE1_PRODUCTC	LINE1_PRODUCTNAME	ORDERT	TOTAL	BALANCE
Ottoman	Educational Seminars	Executive Succession Planning	Regular	\$280.00	\$140.00
Ottoman	Magazines and Journals	Sampco Quarterly	Regular	\$252.00	(\$10.00)
Ottoman	Educational Seminars	Financial Planning Update Fall 2013	Regular	\$170.62	\$170.62
Ottoman	Books	The History of Sampco	Regular	\$253.00	\$0.00
Ottoman	Exhibits	XYZ Expo	Regular	\$7,500.00	\$0.00
Ottoman	Educational Seminars	XYZ Course	Regular	\$600.00	\$600.00
Ottoman	Educational Seminars	XYZ Orientation	Regular	\$400.00	\$400.00
Ottoman	Hats	Sampco Baseball Hat	Regular	\$19.95	\$0.00
Ottoman	Memberships	Corporate Membership	Regular	\$1,500.00	\$0.00
				SUM: 34985.02	SUM: 20024.37

Use the Quick Search to run these additional examples of Grouped Views:

- Find Revenue by Person OR Company
- Find Revenue Grouped by Product per Co or Person

Managing and Sharing Views

Distributing Views via the Views Service:

- 1. Administrator creates a View under Framework, Views service.
- 2. Administrator assigns the View to a manager or possibly to a specific end user.
- 3. The manager (or end user) can then share the views with other users, via Shared Folders.

Distributing Views via Shared Folders:

- 1. A manager (or end user) creates a View in their local instance of Aptify.
- 2. A manager (or end user) places a View in a Shared Folder.
- 3. The manager (or end user) informs their team that they can connect to the Shared Folder.

Important - Aptify recommends that new/critical (not pre-loaded) Views be created by an administrator or manager and then placed shared in folders or, when appropriate, embedded in dashboards. This enables standard business processes, ensures Views accuracy, and allows managers to quickly update Views for all end users via centralized folders. End users can then create their exception views - views that only they personally use (not shared) by copying those existing views to ensure a baseline of accuracy.

Creating Shared Folders and Shared Views

Creating a shared folder is the same in any service.

- 1. Select the Persons Service.
- 2. Click More Actions. From the drop-down, select Create New Folder.



- 3. In the Name field enter, Membership Department
- 4. Provide a **Description**

Create Folder	· &
Name	Membership Department
Description	
	Charachia Faldan
	OK CANCEL

- 5. Click to select the checkbox indicating to Share this Folder.
 - For folders that are not to be shared, leave the box unchecked.

- 6. Click OK.
 - The folder will display on the Service screen with a hand holding the folder.
- 7. Click the Membership Department folder, making it the active folder.

Persons		
San Francisco Student Members	Membership Department	Member Join Date Prompt
Persons CES >25	Accounting and Finance TC	Test
Membership Renewal Workflo w	Committee Views	Campaign Views

- 8. Click More Actions Create View.
- 9. Provide a sample view Name (of your choice)
- 10. Click the General tab; click the Advanced >Configuration tab.
- 11. Note that the Folder Name field auto fills with the shared folder name.

Advanced > Configuration 🗸					
Entity Base View		Q			
	Warning! Changing the Base View will clear a you have configured up to this point.	ny settings			
Form Template					
Record Template					
Preview Template		Q 🗄			
Folder	Membership Department	Q 🔳			
	Show Preview Pane				
	🗸 Read Uncommitted				

- 12. Click Advanced in order to select Filters and Fields to complete your view.
- 13. Click **OK** to run the view.
- 14. Note the shared folder icon embedded in the **Persons** service in upper left corner.

Note: A user can add views to any folder that they own, but NOT to one they do not.
Chapter



Reports

Objective	5.1
Exporting a View to Microsoft Excel 5	5.2
Creating Reports	5.4
Running a Report	5.5
Analysis Reports	5.8
Creating Mailing Labels with Crystal Reports	5.11

Objective

In this section, users will see further applications of utilizing views to not only report data but communicate it as well. The exercises provide practice in understanding some of the Aptify reporting features including how Aptify integrates with Microsoft Excel, how to run a Report, and how Aptify integrates with Business Objects Crystal Reports® and with Microsoft SSRS (SQL Server Reporting Services). The reporting functionality and exercises in this section will apply to SSRS reports as well.

After completing this section, users will know the process for:

- Exporting a view to Microsoft Excel
- Working with Lists
- How to run Reports

Exporting a View to Microsoft Excel

The following directions explain how to export a specific views' results (Companies) to Excel.

- 1. Open the San Francisco Student Members view from Persons.
- 2. From the view button bar, click the More button;
- 3. Select Export to Excel to launch the Excel Integration Wizard.
 - To select all records, a user should not have any records selected when they click this icon (otherwise, only the selected record(s) will be exported rather than all records in the view). If a record has accidentily been selected, click Refresh.
 - To export only specific records, do so before clicking Export to Excel.

More 🕶					
Record Hi	story				
Export to I	Excel				
Reports					
Add To Lis	st				
Add View To Favorites					
Auto-Resize Columns					
Messagin	g				
Entity Bull	Operations Wizard				
Add Perso	ons To Committee Wizard				
Add Perso	ons To Campaign				

- 4. From the Column Header Display Options, select Use Database Field Names.
- 5. Enter a sample File Name. (File name is required to activate OK button).

Excel Integration Wizard
Select from the options below to save this view as a Microsoft Excel file.
Column Header Display Options Other Display Names Use Display Names
Coptions
File Name Worksheet Name
OK CANCEL

- 6. Click OK. The Excel icon download appears in the lower-left corner; click to open.
 - A Microsoft Excel window appears; the window contains the information from the view.
 - After exporting the view data to Microsoft Excel, you can format the spreadsheet and resize the columns as necessary.

XI	🕼 🚊 🏷 👌 🕫								
FIL	E HOME INSE	RT PAGE LA	YOUT FORMULAS	DATA REVIEW VIEW					
	Cut	Arial	- 10 - A A	≡ ₌ ≫ + = Wrap Tex	d v	≠ S			
Pasti ~	e 💉 Format Painter	B I <u>U</u> -	🗏 • 🖄 • A • 1	= = = €= €= 🗮 Merge &	.Center ~ \$ ~ % * €.0 .00 C Fo	onditional Format : ormatting = Table :	35		
	Clipboard G	Foi	nt G	Alignment	🕞 Number 🕞		S	tyles	
0	PRODUCT NOTICE Mo	ost of the features	of Excel have been disa	abled because it hasn't been activate	d. <u>A</u> ctivate				
A13		√ f _x							
	АВ	С	D	E	F	G	Н		
1	ID First Name	Last Name	Member Type	Company	Title	Status Name	State	City	
2	90 Quillan	Byrd	Student Member	Cottonwood Taping Systems	Customer Support Senior VP	Active	CA	San Francisco	
3	48 Wainwright	Jackson	Student Member	Let's Stop N Shop	Advertising Associate	Active	CA	San Francisco	
4	2100 Brian	Jones	Student Member	Let's Stop N Shop	VP, Engineering	Active	CA	San Francisco	
5	1758 Mason	Lowe	Student Member	Let's Stop N Shop	Manager, Research	Active	CA	San Francisco	
6	2484 Emily	May	Student Member	Cottonwood Taping Systems	Information Technology Senior VP	Active	CA	San Francisco	
7	1339 Andrew	Walker	Student Member	Bechtel Group, Inc.	Sales Executive VP	Active	CA	San Francisco	

7. Close Microsoft Excel without saving the file.

Creating Reports

While the View system provides capabilities to filter and sort data, it is most effective for displaying results in a tabular format. To provide a more formalized, form based output, Aptify integrated Crystal Reports® into the Viewing system.

Using the Reports function, an option located under the More Actions menu of every View, a view can be exported using a variety of report formats. The Report wizard can generate **standard reports, mailing labels, export records, print name badges**, etc.

The Report Wizard walks the user through the steps to generate reports. Although there are general types of reports that apply to all of the services, most reports are service-specific. The general reports in every service are the List, Detail, and Export reports.

List and Detail reports print out information contained in the View. Export reports are often useful for selecting specific fields and records from the service and exporting them for use in other software applications.

Reports specific to a service are listed on various category tabs in the Report Wizard. These reports can be modified or replaced as required. System administrators can add client-specific reports to a particular service.

Crystal Reports is a database reporting tool created by SAP (http://www.sap.com/solution/sme/software/analytics/crystal-reports/index.html). **An** administrator can create new customized Crystal Reports for an organization but you need to purchase a license from SAP first.

Notes: When printing mailing labels, the List ID appears on each label for marketing purposes--users can identify information about the mailing (such as when the label was printed) based on the List ID.

Aptify ships Orders using several service-specific reports.

Running a Report

In this section, users will learn how to export data from a view to a text file.

- 1. Open the San Francisco Student Members view.
- 2. Click the More button.
- 3. Select Reports.



- 4. Observe the various types of possible reports.
 - Each tab has subsequent choices as well. Click to examine the possibilities.

Report Wizard		8
Select a Report		
General Labels	Membership Subscription Meetings	Analysis
NAME	DESCRIPTION	REPORT FORMAT
Person Report	Report of Person Information	Crystal Report
Person Roster	Person Roster Report	Crystal Report
Persons By Company	Pie chart of persons by Company	Crystal Report
Persons By ZipCode	Pie chart of persons by zipcode	Crystal Report
Persons By Member Type	Pie chart of persons by membership type	Crystal Report
Aptify Badge	Creates batch for each person who is attending the meeting.	Crystal Report

- 5. Of the report types, select **Person Roster**, click **Finish**. The report will show information based on data from the persons' records in the view.
- These functions can also be completed in other services, Companies, etc. as shown below



- 6. Close the report, Click the More button; select **Reports** again to try other options.
- 7. Click the **Meetings** tab, select Meeting Tents, and a foldable name tent will be created for all records in the view



Print or export any report

To export or print a report, click the top, left corresponding buttons.

• After creating the export file, you can import its contents into another program, such as Microsoft Word or Excel.



Print:

Print to PDF	×
Page Range:	-
All Pages	
Select Pages	
From: To:	
Print to PDF:	_
The viewer must export to PDF to print. Choose the Print option from the PDF reader application once the document is opened. Note: You must have a PDF reader installed to print. (eg. Adobe Reader)	:





Analysis Reports

In this section, users will learn how to run several Crystal Reports.

To create a pie chart of members/persons by zip code/area code:

- 1. From a view such as **Persons in CA**, click the **More** button.
- 2. Click Reports.
- 3. From the Membership tab, click to select the Pie Chart of Membership by Area Code.
 - Note other options from the General tab: Persons by Zip Code or Pie Chart of Persons by Membership by Type.
 - Main Report Membership Distribution by Area Code ,24 213 7.3% 2.4% 310 2.1% 408 415 510 562 619 650 21.5% 9.7% 9.1% 4.5% 4.8% 21.8% 707 2.4% 72 2.4% 805 0 818 2.4% 2.1% 916 5.2% 925 32Total 100.0% 16 15 30 213 310 408 415 510 31 562 15
- 4. Click Finish.

To create an analysis report of companies data:

- 1. Open the Companies Service and click to open the General Look up Views folder.
- 2. Run a view, such as, All Companies. Click the More button; from the drop-down, select **Reports**.
 - The Report Wizard launches and displays the list of reports supported by the Companies service.
- 3. Click the Analysis tab.
- 4. Select the Pie Chart by State report. (Note that this is a Crystal Report.)

R	eport Wizard		×
Se	lect a Report		
	General Membership Ana	ysis Label	
	Name	Description	
	Pie Chart By State	Distribution of Companies, Grouped By State	•

- 5. Click Next.
- 6. Click **Finish** to preview the report.
 - A window opens that contains the report. The company data on the class system differs from the example below but your results should look something like this:



7. Double-click one of the slices in the pie chart to display the records that correspond to the pie slice.

In order to return to the main screen of the report, click the *grey* tab in the upper corner of the view.

8. Click the X in the upper corner of the Crystal Reports window to close the report.

Company Report

- 1. Open the **Companies in Oregon** created earlier, click the **More** button.
- 2. Click Reports.
- 3. Under the General tab, click one of the Companies reports.

Company Report						
	NY NW					
			1 of 7	9/12/2014		
D	ee Crustel Technologie	e Inc				
Come	ee Crystal Technologie	5, INC.	: Other For Profit			
		-turne (pr				
Main:	5776 South Lakeshore Lane Portland, OR 97201	Billing	i: 5929 Bixby Street Corvallis, OR 95985			
Main Museum	1503-860-3657		. Cornerste Member			
Main Fax:	1503-806-9006	Hember Lype JoinDate	:: 8/1/2007			
Main Email:	main@princrytecinc.com	MailCody	in the second			
Web Site:	http://www.princrytecinc.com	CRRT				
Co. Type:		USCongress StateSenate				
5 5 5 5 m		StateHouse	b:			
DeB Rating: Terms:						
DaB Rating: Terms:		No Emos	58 236			

Creating Mailing Labels with Crystal Reports

- 1. Open the **Persons in OR** view created earlier.
 - This can be done with views in other services as well
- 2. In the view toolbar, click the More button. Click Report.
- 3. Click the Labels tab.
- 4. Select Avery 5161 Label and click Finish.
 - Using a printer with the Avery 5161 Label sheets, the labels can be directly printed from the Crystal Report window.
 - Alternatively, a user could export the report to another format by clicking the **Export** button.

🗐 🥸 🖈 🖾 🕅 Find 🕅	🕒 🛍 1 of 1+ 🔹 100% 🔹		
Group Tree « M	fain Report		
	SABRINA LEWISIPRINCE CRYSTAL 69 TECHNOLOGIES, INC. 5776 South Lakeshore Lane PORTLAND OR 97201	BRIAN REEVESULIVIC MICROPOLISH DIVISION 69 939 Silver Canyon Street 123 PORTLAND OR 97201	EDWARD BATESITHE BIG CHEESE 69 89 Jefferson Way Suite 2 PORTLAND OR 97201
	BAKER ISADOR/GREAT LAKES FOOD MARKET 69 2732 Baker Bivd. EUGENE OR 97403	REGINALD LEELONESOME PINE RESTAURANT 69 89 Chiaroscuro Rd. PORTLAND OR 97219	HERBERT TERRY/PRINCE CRYSTAL 69 TECHNOLOGIES, INC. 5775 South Lakeshore Lane PORTLAND OR 97201
	HERBERT JOHNSONHUNGRY COYOTE IMPORT9 STORE City Center Plaza 516 Main St. ELGIN OR 97827	ANDREW JOHNSON/PPLM OARSMEN DISCOUNE9 SOFTWARE COMPANY 1255 Ironwood Avenue Sufle S15 PORTLAND OR 97201	MR ROBERT MILLERIGREAT LAKES FOOD MARKES 2732 Baker Bivd. EUGENE OR 97403
	MICHAEL WADEULIWC MICROPOLISH DIVISION 69 939 Silver Canyon Street 123 PORTLAND OR 97201	MR MICHAEL GARCIA JR/THE BIG CHEESE 69 89 Jefferson Way Suite 2 PORTLAND OR 97201	ATHENA CARTERIHUNGRY COYOTE IMPORT 69 STORE City Center Plaza 516 Main St. ELGIN OR 97827
	DAHLIA NEAULONESOME PINE RESTAURANT 69 89 Chiarosouro Rd. PORTLAND OR 97219	ROBERT JONESIPRINCE CRYSTAL TECHNOLOGIES INC. 5775 South Lakeshore Lane PORTLAND OR 97201	MRS GABRIELA RODRIQUEZIULWC MICROPOLI88 DIMISION 939 Silver Canyon Street 123 PORTLAND OR 97201
	PAUL ROBINSON/PPLM CARSMEN DISCOUNT 69 SOFTWARE COMPANY 1255 ironwood Avenue	CHRISTINA JONESIGREAT LAKES FOOD MARKEB9 2732 Baker Bivd. FILCENIE OR 67/03	VALERIE LOWELONESOME PINE RESTAURANT 69 89 Chiarosouro Rd. BORTI AND OR 67210

5. Close the Crystal Report.

Chapter



Contact Logs

Objective	6.1
Understanding Contact Logs	6.2
Creating a Contact Log from the Persons Service	6.3
Using the New Contact Log Entry Wizard	6.5
Contact Log Spaces	6.6
Contact Log Views	6.8

Objective

In this section, you will understand how to use the Contact Log service. Contact Logs are used to track customer interactions throughout the Aptify system. They can be created manually from several locations or automatically created as part of a process flow.

After completing this chapter, you will be able to:

- Understand Contact Logs
- Create a Contact Log from the:
 - Persons Service
 - Employees Service

Understanding Contact Logs

Users can keep track of their interactions with customers by creating a Contact Log record each time they communicate with a customer (via mail, telephone, fax, e-mail, etc.). The most common use of a Contact Log is from a Persons record where an Add Contact Log Action button is embedded in the Landing Page.

Users can **link a Contact Log record to one or more related records in another service.** For example, a Contact Log record detailing a telephone conversation with Anthony Atkins regarding a specific order can be linked to Anthony Atkins's Persons record, an Employees record, and the relevant Orders record.

The **Contact Logs service also integrates with Microsoft Outlook.** If an organization uses Microsoft Outlook for email, follow-up appointments scheduled within a Contact Log record automatically appear in the Outlook Calendar.

Users can create a Contact Log from the Contact Log tab on another form, such as the Persons, Employees, or Orders form. When a new Contact Log record is opened from a Persons, Employees, or Orders record, Aptify automatically adds a link to that record in the new Contact Log's Link tab.

Contact Logs can be auto generated by a process flow in Aptify. When an order is shipped, Aptify can automatically generate a contact log. When a Bulk Message is sent, Aptify can automatically generate a contact log.

Contact Logs can be routed internally in Aptify by leveraging Dashboard Views. An embedded view in a dashboard, such as the My Contact Logs view in the Training DB's Home dashboard, can be very effective in alerting the logged in user as to which records demand their attention. These views are easily built and embedded by Administrators with direction from the requesting department. The filters on these embedded views can be very directed by leveraging the **SQL Value Statements for Views** located in **Appendix F** of this manual.

Creating a Contact Log from the Persons Service

A user can create a Contact Log record from the Persons, Employees, Orders, or Contact Log service. In this exercise, a user will create a Contact Log record from a Persons record.

- 1. Open a Persons record from the Home dashboard, Recently used Records.
- 2. Click the Add Contact Log button from the Actions menu.



- 3. The Contact Log displays with the Date/Time auto-generated.
- 4. In the Description field, enter Contact Log Test.
 - When running a view of Contact Logs, the contents will be a display field.
- 5. Leave the Type field set to Phone and Category set to Sales.
- 6. Change the Direction to Inbound (customer initiated contact).
- 7. Enter the last day of the current week and a time of 9:00 AM in the Date/Time field.
- 8. From the Status drop-down list, select In-Progress.
- 9. In the Assigned To field, enter End User and select.
- 10. In the Reason field, enter Test.

8	👌 🛗 🕙 👍 More	•
Date	01/18/2016 🗸	
Description	Contact Log Test	
Туре	Phone V Crea	ator
Category	Sales 🗸	
Direction	Inbound 🗸	
Next Con	tact 🗸	
Date/Tir	ne 01/22/2016 09:00:00 AM 🗸 Creat	e Follow-Up
Stat	us In-Progress 🗸	
Prior	ity Medium 🗸	
Pare	nt	Q 🗄
Assigned	To End User	Q 🕂
Forwa	rd	Q 🖪
Reas	on	

11. Click Save.

- 12. When a Contact Log is created and saved:
 - Aptify auto-adds the user name in the Creator field.
 - If Microsoft Outlook installed on users computer, Aptify automatically creates an appointment (shown below) based on the info provided in the Next Contact tab.

	5 ♂↑↓	Ŧ		Call XYZ Cor	npany with r	equested inf	ormation - Ap	pointment	- 🗆	×
FILE	APPOINTMENT	INSERT FO	ORMAT TEXT	REVIEW						
P	🧲 🔣 Calendar				N		W Show As:	Free Free	Q	
Save & Del Close	^{ete} G Forward ▪	Appointment	Scheduling Assistant	Online Meeting	Meeting Notes	Invite Attendees	鼻 Reminder	None	700m	
	Actions	Sho	w	Online Me	Meeting N	Attendees		Option.	Zoom	^
Subject	Call XYZ Company w	ith requested info	ormation							
Location										•
Start time	Mon 11/4/201x		10:00 AM	•] All day event					
End time	Mon 11/4/201x		10:30 AM	•				le la		
Call XYZ Co	mpany with requeste	2 ed information	Contact Log 296047.APTFRM							

- 13. On the Contact Log record, select the Links section heading.
 - Two links are listed Aptify automatically adds a link to the originating Persons record and that person's Companies record.



- 14. Click Save, then Close the record.
- 15. Return to the **Persons** record.
- 16. Close the **Persons** record.

Using the New Contact Log Entry Wizard

Using the Contact Log Wizard from the Home or Customer Management Dashboard can save time if the user is already aware of the Person's ID.

1. Select the Contact Log Wizard Button from the Home dashboard.



2. Enter 01 in the PersonID field - this should embed Aiesha Baldwin's record.

New Contact Log Wiz	ard	8
	Person	Contact Log
	Select the Person you would like to link to the Contact Log:	
PersonID	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners	Q III
CANCEL	S NEXT	

- 3. Click the **Next** button.
- 4. Fill out the remaining fields on the Contact Log.

New Contact L	.og Wizard					
		0			2	
		Person			Contact Log	
Date	01/18/2016		~			
Description						
Туре	Phone		\sim			
Category	Sales		\sim			
Direction	Outbound		\sim			
	Next Conta	ot v	Sec. Cra	nte Follow-Lio		
	Statue	Incomplete				
	Priority	Medium	~			
	Parent	incolor in	•	0		
	Assigned To					
	Forward			Q 🖬		
	Reason					
			-	NEVT		
CANCEL				- NEAT		

5. Click Finish.

Contact Log Spaces

Spaces is Aptify's version of social streaming tools which acts as a gateway for users to quickly perform common functions including creating records or assigning tasks. It provides a way for users of work within Aptify and collaborate with others without leaving Aptify.

There are a variety of methods for posting information and responses. In addition to enabling users to receive relevant info via a news feed, Spaces provides the following functions:

- Information can be linked or tracked to specific records or people within a post.
- Users can comment on specific actions with links to related records, such as, Tasks, Contact Logs and Topics
- Comments can be made in-line as part of an existing thread, including hyperlinks, attachments and images
- Posts can include text, website, images and formatting in available for font, color and other style elements

Users can link records to a Spaces post using the Link button or by using the @ in their post.

- 1. Open Spaces from the Applications menu.
- 2. In the What are you up to? field, enter Test.
- 3. Click the @Link
- 4. Click on the displayed dropdown select the **Persons** and enter **Baldwin**.
- 5. Select Aiesha Baldwin.



6. Click Update from the lower right hand corner.

From the **Actions** tab, a user can create a Task, or from a feed click to select a Task, and act on it without having to go to and open the the Task record. The **Actions** drop-down list allows users to perform updates directly from a Spaces post:

- Create a new Task, assign to yourself or another employee
- Task Update (percentage complete on a particular task)
- Follow up creates a Contact Log
- 7. Click Action. From the drop-down, select Follow Up.

Search for Conversational Topics	
Enter your update below:	
B I U A Y O Y 注注控 CO C @ Link ACTION >	
C Follow Up: Date D1/15/2016 02:58:56 PM 💙 Description Follow Up 🔳 Test	
Add: 🖉 🖉	Public 🗸
	UPDATE CANCEL

- 8. Click Update.
 - This creates a Contact Log where both parties are notified of the information.

Linking a record to a spaces post alerts other readers and provides access to that record. Spaces includes a notification feature, located on the main toolbar, allowing users to receive notification while working in any function of Aptify.

When something new is posted that tags a user, the alert icon (bell) will indicate the number of current alerts.



Clicking the alerts icon displays a drop-down list of alert details. Clicking the link to a specific alert opens the post selected. Once a post is selected, it is removed from the alert list.

Spaces provides Authorization options for specifying who can interact with the thread:

- Public unrestrictive
- Following those who have a status of following your information
- Known User within Aptify, all known users
- Only Me
- My Organization

Contact Log Views

Leveraging Contact Log Filters

Views of Contact Logs that leverage SQL values (see Appendix F for more examples) can quickly present the multiple logs assigned to an employee. These views can be very effective when embedded in Dashboards, such as the My Contact Logs view of the Home dashboard. Below are two examples of View Properties that leverage SQL values to bring exact data back for the logged in user.

- 1. Using Quick Search, find and select the My In Progress Contact Logs view.
- 2. Open the properties of the view (Gear button).

This view's results displays contact logs with an In Progress status for the logged in user.

View Properties			8
View Properties		ОК	CANCEL
Name	My In Progress Contact Logs		
View Type	List View		\sim
Filters 🗸			
🗄 🚷 🔳	C		
Contact Log	Assigned To Exactly Matches EMPLOYEE_NAME		*
Contact Log	Ctatus Exactly Matches In-Progress		×

- 1. Using Quick Search, find and select the My Recent Contact Log Activity view.
- 2. Open the properties of the view (Gear button).

View results displays contact logs over the past 30 days assigned to the logged in user

View Properties			8
View Properties		ОК	CANCEL
Name	My Recent Contact Log Activity		
View Type	List View		\sim
Filters -			
🗄 {×} 🕮	C		
Contact Log	Creator Exactly Matches SUSER_NAME		
Contact Log	Date > TODAY-31		*
Contact Log	Cate < TODAY+1		*

Contact Log Base Views

Utilizing Base views is also an effective method for presenting Contact Log data for analysis. Contact Logs can be linked to any Service through the Linked section of a Contact Log. Viewing the associated Contact Logs to a Person or Company while being able to leverage multiple fields from a Persons record can be done by using the **Find Contact Log - Persons** (**Base View**).

- 1. From the Quick Search, enter and find the Find Contact Log Persons (Base View).
- 2. Enter End User in the Employee prompt.
- 3. Observe the **Results**.
- 4. As Base View results show multiple fields from the Persons and Contact Log services.

Fi	nd Contac Person I Categor	t Log - Po D: 0 /V: <catego< th=""><th>ersons (B</th><th>ASE VIEW)</th><th>st Name: Status:</th><th><last name=""> Com; <status> Pri</status></last></th><th>pany: iority:</th><th><compa< th=""><th>any> /></th><th></th><th>Description Employee</th><th>C <descript< th=""><th>on></th><th>GO</th><th>Type: CANCE</th><th><type></type></th><th></th></descript<></th></compa<></th></catego<>	ersons (B	ASE VIEW)	st Name: Status:	<last name=""> Com; <status> Pri</status></last>	pany: iority:	<compa< th=""><th>any> /></th><th></th><th>Description Employee</th><th>C <descript< th=""><th>on></th><th>GO</th><th>Type: CANCE</th><th><type></type></th><th></th></descript<></th></compa<>	any> />		Description Employee	C <descript< th=""><th>on></th><th>GO</th><th>Type: CANCE</th><th><type></type></th><th></th></descript<>	on>	GO	Type: CANCE	<type></type>	
	<mark>.</mark> 2	8	t C	Q: N	More ▼												
C	PERSO	LAST N	FIRST N	COMPANY -	CL DAT	E CLDESCRIPTION		CLT	CL PRI	CLSTAT	EMPL	CLCATE	ADDRESS	CITY	ST	ZIP C	PHONE AREA
C] 78	Miller	Dalton	QUICK-Stop	05/10/2 06:18:54 AM	 Request for Meeting Registration pack	et.	E-mail	Medium	Incomplete	End User	Sales	Business Address	Cune		01307	
C] 1	Baldwin	Aiesha	Danube Partners	05/10/2 06:09:21 AM	Billing dispute regarding membership dues.		Phone	Medium	In- Progress	End User	Sales	Business Address	Palo Alto	CA	94301	650

Chapter



Case Management

Objective	7.1
Creating Cases	7.2
Case Views	7.4

Objective

Users will be able to:

- Create Cases
- Track Cases from inception to conclusion

Overview

Case management enables organizations to track their customer's inquiries regarding long term requests or issues and track the resolutions provided. Individual Cases track incidents or tickets and are given a unique record. This enables each customer issue to be tracked and monitored through its history. Which in turn supports the creation of detailed customer and case data centric Views and Reports.

Some common instances where Case Management is used:

- Track Initial Customer Inquiries
- IT Help Desk
- Customer Support requests and Ticketing
- Sales Inquiries
- Peer review
- Ethics violations
- Long term projects

Creating Cases

- 1. Click the Case Management Application.
- 2. Click on the New Case button from the dashboard button bar.
- 3. In the Title field, enter XYZ Case.
- 4. In the Status field, enter Reported. In the Priority field, enter High.
- 5. In the Category field, enter Finance. In the Type field, enter Complaint.
- 6. In the Company field, enter the name of XYZ Corporation which submitted the case.
- 7. In the Contact field, enter the name of your person (or a persons ID #).
- 8. In the Summary field, enter Test.
- 9. Note the Date Reported and Started fields default to today's date.
- 10. In the **Source** field, specify the source of the case as **External**.
- 11. In the Manager field, enter a persons ID #.
- 12. In the Type of Assignment field, enter Internal.

8 🗟	E,	Ð	4	More 🕶				
Title	XYZ C	ase						
Parent								Q
Status	Report	ted		~		Priority	Low	
Category	Financ	ce		~		Туре	Complaint	
Company	XYZ C	orporation			۹ 🔳			
Contact	Baldw	in, Aiesha/Da	anube Partr	<u>ters</u>	ົ 🔍 🔳			
eneral -				1				
eneral 👻 imeline Date Re	ported	01/18/2016	~	Source	External			Q 11
eneral – imeline Date Re Est. Stai	ported rt Date	01/18/2016	~	Source Reviewed By	External			Q 👔 Q 🖬
eneral ▾ imeline Date Re Est. Star Date S	ported rt Date Started	01/18/2016	~	Source Reviewed By Manager	External John San	<u>uels</u>		Q. ■ Q. ■
eneral ↓ imeline Date Re Est. Star Date S Est. Completio	ported rt Date Started n Date	01/18/2016	> > >	Source Reviewed By Manager Assignment Type of J	External John San	<u>uels</u>	4	् 👔 ् 🖬
eneral – imeline Date Re Est. Star Date S Est. Completio Date (ported rt Date Started n Date Closed	01/18/2016 01/18/2016	>	Source Reviewed By Manager Assignment Type of J Date Assign	External John San	nuels It Interna	1	Q ∰ Q ∰
eneral - imeline Date Re Est. Star Date S Est. Completio Date (losure	ported rt Date Started n Date Closed	01/18/2016	> > > >	Source Reviewed By Manager Assignment Type of / Date Assig Primary Intern	External John San Assignmen ned Interna	nuels It Interna	d	Q ∎ Q ∎
eneral - imeline Date Re Est. Star Date S Est. Completio Date (losure Closed By	ported rt Date Started in Date Closed	01/18/2016	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Source Reviewed By Manager Assignment Type of J Date Assign Primary Intern Primary Intern	External John San Assignmen ned Interna al Assigne signee Rol	nuels It Interna II e	d	Q ∰ Q ∰ Q ∰
eneral - imeline Date Re Est. Star Date S Est. Completio Date (losure Closed By Result	ported rt Date Started in Date Closed	01/18/2016	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Source Reviewed By Manager Assignment Type of / Date Assign Primary Intern Primary As Date Assign	External John San Assignmen ned Interna al Assigne signee Rol ied Externa	nuels It Interna Il e	1 	 Q ∎ Q ∎ Q ∎

- 13. Click the General tab, select Details.
- 14. In the Recorded By field, confirm your name (or End User).
- 15. For the Case Report Method, select Phone.
- 16. Click Save. Now more options are available from the General drop-down list.

Details -				
Case Report Method	Web	\checkmark		Auto Updated Manager
Recorded By	End User	Q 🔳		Auto Updated External
Date Recorded	01/18/2016	\sim		Did Not Know #
Date First Responded		\sim		
Alternate Contact Name			Phone	
Description				
Special Needs				

- 17. Click the General drop-down, select Contact Log.
- 18. Click on the New Contact Log button.
- 19. Enter a Contact Log Description.
- 20. Click on the Links area observe the Linked Case.

8	B	Ð		More 👻	
Date	01/18/2016		~		
Description	Case Contact	Log			
Туре	Phone		\sim	Creator	
Category	Sales		\sim		
Direction	Outbound		\sim		
Links 👻					
E XY	Z Case	Enter Link	k Туре		

- 21. Save and Close the Contact Log.
- 22. Observe the **Contact Log** that was created.
- 23. Review the remaining sections of the Case record.
- 24. Save and Close the Case record.

Case Views

- 1. From the Quick Search, enter and find the Find Cases (BASE VIEW) view.
- 2. Enter **Danube** in the **Company** prompt.
- 3. Observe the **Results**.
 - As Base View results show fields from the Persons and Cases services.

Find Cases (BA Person ID: Status:	o Status>		Person: < Case ID: 🛛 🛛	Person> Com GO (npany: Danube	
. Z	B 🗊	C 🕸	More 🔻			
DATE START	ED CASE ID	COMPANY	PERSON	CASE TITLE	MEMBER TYPE	CASE CATEGORY
12/30/2015	3727	Danube Partners	Aiesha Baldwin	XYZ Case	Member	Finance
01/18/2016	3728	Danube Partners	Aiesha Baldwin	XYZ Case	Member	Finance
09/30/2009	1690	Danube Partners	Alexander Neal	Service Request Finance	Student Member	Finance
05/05/2009	1695	Danube Partners	Alexander Neal	Compliment Meetings	Student Member	Meetings
12/10/2008	1700	Danube Partners	Alexander Neal	Service Request Finance	Student Member	Finance

Chapter



Committees

Objectives	8.1
Creating a Committees Record	8.2
Creating Committee Terms	8.3
Adding Members to Committees	8.4
Editing Member Information	8.7
Committee Views	8.8

Objectives

In this section, users will use the Committee Management application and will be able to:

- Create a Committee record
- Create Committee Terms
- Add members to committee terms
- Assign titles and ranks to committee members

Overview

Aptify's Committee Management application provides diverse functionality to address the varying committee structures of an organization which may focus on specific tasks or events. The committee may be designed to operate for one function for a short period of time, such as organizing a corporate event, or it may be a long-term project that operates indefinitely. Additionally, committees may be organized into sub-committees.

The Committee Management application revolves around three interacting services.

- Committees tracks overall information about committee and its purpose.
- **Committee Terms** tracks information specific to the scope of the particular term: Goals, Dates, Accomplishments, Meetings, Notes, etc.
- **Committee Members** tracks the Persons that are Members and have Roles in the Committee as well as the Dates and Acccomplishments of their tenure.

In Aptify, members are associated with the Committee Terms record, which requires each committee to have at least one committee term linked to it.

Note: If a user's organization does not use Committee Terms, they still would create one Committee record and one Committee Term for each Committee.

Creating a Committees Record

A committee record is created once for each committee, then committee terms records are added each term/year, linked to the main committee record. It is rare for a Committee record to be accessed once it is created; most interaction surrounding Committees happens at the Term or Member level.

- 1. Click the Committee Management Application.
- 2. From the Committee Management dashboard, click the New Committees button.
- 3. In the Name field, enter XYZ Committee (XYZ= your initials).
- 4. In the **Organization** field (which ordinarily would be your organization name), enter an ID number of 1, press **Tab** to auto-fill.
- 5. From the Committee Type drop-down, select Governance.
- 6. Note that the record defaults to the **General** tab. Click to see options not yet available.
- 7. The Coordinator field requires an employee name; Type End & select End User.
- 8. Leave Description and Goals blank normally these would contain extensive text.
- 9. From the Reach drop-down list, select National.
- 10. In the Date Founded field, enter a date [Eleven months prior to today's date].

😑 xyz	Committe	e (ID: 4)) ×	_		
8		Î	Ð	G		More 👻
Nan Pare Organizatio Committee Tyj	ne XYZ Com nt <u>Sampco H</u> De Governan	mittee Holdings, ce	Inc.		Q	
General 🗸						
Coordinato	r End User					
Description	n					
Goal	S					
Read	National					
Date Founder	01/30/201	4 🗸				

- 11. Click Save.
- 12. Click the General tab and note other tabs now active.

Creating Committee Terms

The Committee Term records tracks the terms of different committees and their information. A term would be the length of time the committee is in session for a year, or other period. Members are designated on the Terms Record.

- 1. On your Committees record, General tab drop-down, select the Terms tab.
- 2. Click the New Record button in the toolbar.

Terms	*					
Terms	of XYZ	Com	nittee			
-	\square		Ī	C	8	More 🔻

- A new Committee Terms record appears. Note the record name at the top.
- Aptify automatically fills in the Committee field and the Start Date.
- 3. In the Name field enter 2015 XYZ Committee Term.
 - Most Prompted Views use **Begins With** as an Operator it is much easier to query Terms if they contain the beginning year at the start of the name.
- 4. In the Director field, enter ID #01 (Aiesha Baldwin)
- 5. Enter the Start Date as [Eleven months prior to today's date].
- 6. Enter the End Date as [One month in the future from today's date].

6 6 🚱	15 XYZ	Com	mittee	Term (ID): 48)	×	
8	i) t	1	Ŵ	Ð	G		More 🕶
Name	2015 XY	Z Com	mittee T	erm			
Committee	XYZ Cor	mmittee	e				🔍 💼
Director	Baldwin	, Aiesha	a/Danub	e Partners			Q 🔳
General	-						
St	art Date	01/30/	2014		\sim		
E	Ind Date	01/31/	2015		\sim		
Ter	m Email						
	Goals						
Accomplis	shments						
Si	ummary						
	1	🗸 Allo	w Duplic	ate Memb	ers		

7. Click Save and Close. A term record must be saved before members can be added.

Note: If checked, **Allow Duplicate Members** will enable users to be added a second time if dropped from Term or enable users to be listed under multiple roles.

Adding Members to Committees

Members can be added to a term in three ways: from a Terms Record, a view or a Persons record.

Adding Members from the Committee record

1. From the Terms Record, click the General tab; select Members.



- 2. Click New to create a new terms Member record.
- 3. In the Member field, enter ID #01 (Aiesha Baldwin)
- 4. In the Title field, enter Director. (Optional possibly Designation)
- 5. In the Role field, enter and select Chair.
- 6. Click to select the checkbox, Voting Member.
- 7. Click OK.

Members record			⊗
Committee Term	2015 XYZ Committee Term		
Member	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners	Q	T
Rank	0		
Title	Director		
Role	Chair	Q	T
	Voting Member		
Region			
Start Date	01/30/2014 🗸		
End Date	01/29/2015		
Goals			
Accomplishments			
Summary			
	OK AND NEW OK	CANC	EL
L			

8. Observe the line item under the Members section for Aiesha Baldwin.

Adding Members from a View

Using a view of persons, one or more members may be added to a committee term.

- 1. Click to run the San Francisco Student Members view from Favorites.
- 2. Click the More dropdown; select Add Persons to Committees Wizard



3. The wizard guides the user to add selected person(s) as a member or nominee, and to which terms. Click the drop-down arrows to see the choices, but leave as is.

Add Persons To (Committee Wizard				8
Sele	ct Member/Nominee Info		S	Select Committee Terms	
This wizard allows yo view to one or more c the person(s) as a me filter by which to view	u to add the selected persons from ommittee terms. Select if you wan mber or a nominee and then selec the available committee terms.	n the t to add t the			
Add Person(s) As	Add Person(s) As Member	•			
Committee Terms	Current Committee Terms	•			
CANCEL	0	BACK			

4. Click Next.

- 5. Select the left checkbox for the *XYZ* committee name.
- 6. Click to select the checkbox for **Voting** member. If that field is not showing, expand the wizard screen to show the far right side.

Add Persons	То Соп	nmittee Wizard				8
	Colored N				2	
Select Committe	ee Terms	iember/Nominee im	5		elect committee reims	
SELECTED	ID	COMMITTEE		TERMS		5
	49	XYZ Committee I		2015 X	/Z Committee	c
H 4 1	▶ ▶				_	1 - 1 of 1 items
	L		🕒 ВАСК	NEXT		FINISH

7. Click Finish.

Adding Members from a Persons Record

- 1. Open a **Persons** record off of Recently Used records (one not on the term already).
- 2. Under the Actions menu, click the View Full Record button.
- 3. Click the Contact dropdown; select the Committees section.
- 4. Click the Add to Committees button.

Committees 🗸					
ADD TO COMMITTEE					
	m C tot More -				
	NAME	VOTING MEMBER			
566	2000 Audit Committee				
567	1999 Audit Committee				
568	2001 Audit Committee				

- 5. The following screen displays the Add Persons to Committee Wizard.
- 6. Click Next.
- 7. Click to select the checkbox left XYZ Committee, as well as
- 8. Click Voting Member.
- 9. Click Finish.

Editing Member Information

- 1. Click on the Committee Management Application
- 2. From the Dashboard select the 2015 XYZ Committee Term
- 3. Click on the General Members section
- 4. Double click on Aiesha Baldwin's record
- 5. In the **Rank** field, enter 1.
- 6. In the Region field, enter Northeast.

Members record			8
Committee Term	2015 XYZ Committee		
Member	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners	Q	Û
Rank	1		
Title	Director		
- Role	chair	Q	Î
	Voting Member		
- Region	Northeast		
Start Date	01/30/2014 🗸		
End Date	01/01/2017 🗸		
_ Goals			
-			
Accomplishments			
Summary			
	OK AND NEW OK	CANC	EL

Note: Users can also create Nominees under the Nominees tab of a Term. This enables users to track nominations either emailed/called in or submitted via the web site by members. Users can then use the **Add Persons To Committee Wizard** to add the selected Members from among a view of Nominees to a Term.

Committee Views

- 1. From the Quick Search, enter and find the Find Term Members (BASE VIEW) view.
- 2. Enter 2015 in the Term prompt.
- 3. Observe the **Results**.
 - As Base View results show fields from the Persons, Committee, Terms, and Member services.

Find Term Members (BASE VIEW)	Last Name, First Alast Name, Name:	First Name> Cor	npany: <company></company>	
📙 🗹 🛗 🗂 C 🎕	More 🕶			
NAME/COMPANY COMMITTEE NAM	E TERM	TERM MEMBER STAR	TERM MEMBER END	TERM
Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners XYZ Committee	2015 XYZ Committee Term	01/30/2014	01/29/2015	
Jackson, Wainwright/Let's Stop N XYZ Committee I Shop	2015 XYZ Committee	01/30/2014	01/01/2017	Member
Byrd, Quillan/Cottonwood XYZ Committee I Taping Systems	2015 XYZ Committee	01/30/2014	01/01/2017	Member
Walker, Andrew/Bechtel Group, Inc. XYZ Committee I	2015 XYZ Committee	01/30/2014	01/01/2017	Member
Lowe, Mason/Let's Stop XYZ Committee I N Shop	2015 XYZ Committee	01/30/2014	01/01/2017	Member

- 4. From the Quick Search, enter and find the Find Nominees (BASE VIEW) view.
- 5. Enter 2014 in the Term Name field.
- 6. Observe the **Results**.
 - As Base View results show fields from the Persons, Committee Terms, and Member services

Find Nominees (BASE VIEW)	
Term Name: 20	14 Committee Name	Committee Name> Nominee: <nominee> GO</nominee>
. Z 6) 🗊 C 🔹 More -	
D	NAME	MEMBER
47	2014 Standards Committee	Pintaro, Jessica/Ottoman
47	2014 Standards Committee	Harris, Madison/Frankenversand
47	2014 Standards Committee	Miller, Nadia/Franchi S.p.A.
47	2014 Standards Committee	Wade, Pamela/Galería del gastrónomo
47	2014 Standards Committee	Ericson, Querida/Godos Cocina Típica

Chapter



Products & Inventory

Objective	
Understanding Products	
Creating a New Products Record	
Understanding Pricing	
Adding Prices to a Product	
Creating a Related Product Prompt	
Inventory Objectives	
Creating an Inventory Location	
Creating a Product Inventory Ledger	
Creating a Product Inventory Ledger Entry	
General and Prerequisites Sub-tabs	
Creating a Kit Product	

Objective

In this lab, you will add products to the Aptify system. This includes:

- Understanding products
- Creating a new products record
- Adding prices to a product
- Creating a Related Product Prompt
- Creating an Inventory Location
- Creating a Product Inventory Ledger
- Creating a Product Inventory Ledger Entry
- Creating a Kit Product

Understanding Products

Product Types

Aptify groups similar products together based on required functionality. Basic products use a **General** type designation. **Extended** products use a name-specific designation.

All Products fit into these 6 General and Extended Types:

General

Publication

Meeting

Expo

Housing

Class

Publication, Meeting, Expo, and Housing are all Extended Products Types. When a user specifies a product type other than General on a Products record, Aptify automatically adds an extended product tab to the Products form. For example, when the Publication product type is selected, a Publications tab appears on the Products record. Extended order detail forms are defined for products with product types of Expos, Meetings, and Housing.

Product Categories

Product Categories group similar products together and are configured by administrators. Users can create a product hierarchy of categories and sub-categories. General Ledger (GL) Accounts are also linked to new products in a category and auto-generated on a product when that Category is designated. This enables a simplified product setup.

Aptify's sample database includes several predefined product categories. An organization should create new product categories as necessary based on its particular product/service mix.
Creating a New Products Record

- 1. Select the **Product Maintenance** Application and note the dashboard buttons and views.
- 2. Click the New Products Record button on the dashboard. .
- 3. In the Name field, enter XYZ Product (where XYZ are your initials).
- 4. In the Category field, enter Publications. Press Tab.
 - Note that the Publications Type was automatically entered for the user. Aptify will automatically set the type of product as it relates to the category selected.
 - A Publication tab is now active

■ XYZ Product (ID: 9922) ×				
8	B 😶	C 💧	More 🕶	
Nar Catego Ty	me XYZ Product pry <u>Books/Publicati</u> pe Publication	ons		No Photo
Parent Produ	uct			Q 🗄 Available
Publication -	•			
General 🗸				
Publisher				Q 🗄
Date Written	~			
Date Copyright	~			
Date Published	~			
ISBN/ISSN				

- 5. Click Save.
 - Once a record is saved, other tabs are available.

GL Accounts Tab

- 1. Select Accounting > GL Accounts from the Product section drop-down.
- 2. Observe the six GL Accounts listed.
 - These accounts flowed down from the Product Category that was initially saved.

Web enabling

- 1. Click Publications to select Web, select General.
- 2. Note the options available to make the product available via a website. **Web Enabled** must be checked, then the product description, images, etc. can be specified.
- 3. Click **Web>General** to select **Long Description** and **Download Details** for further information that can be configured.

Inventory Tab

- 1. Under the Publications drop-down, select the Inventory tab.
- 2. In the **Require Inventory** box, click to check active.
- 3. In the **Re-Order Qty**. field, enter **100**.
- 4. In the Minimum Stock field, enter 500.
- 5. Click Save.

Inventory -	
Quantity On Hand	Quantity Shipped 0
General -	
Re-Order Qty. 100 Minimum Stock 500 Notification Employee Default Inv. Location Calculate O Cost Meth Include In S Drop Ship Make Inter Requires F Allow Back	Ave. Lead Time 0

Note: Checking **Requires Fullfillment** prevents the current product from being autoshipped at the time of purchase whether by a phone or web based order.

If a user desires a product to be delayed between the time it is ordered and the time it is shipped, perhaps due to a review cycle or inventory concerns, check this box.

Understanding Pricing

Users can specify multiple prices to target specific audiences:

Member-based pricing

Can specify different prices for members and non-members

Date-based pricing (Early Bird specials)

Set prices based on Order date

Quantity Discounts

Provide discounted prices if customer orders specified number of units or above

Combination of multiple pricing features

For example, an early bird special for members only

Multiple Currency

The Order Entry System automatically selects the correct price based on membership of the persons/companies record, order date, and/or order quantity.

Pricing Can be set at three different levels:

- Organization
- Employee
- Product

Setting permissions on the **Organization level** gives <u>all</u> of its employees the ability to override the configured price(s), select a price from a list of available prices, or allow the product to be given to a customer/member for free (price = \$0). Organization-level permissions take precedence over the Employee and Product permissions settings. (Once a user has enabled these permissions for the entire organization, all users will have these abilities regardless of the individual Employee and Product settings.)

If a user wants to set permissions on an **Employee-by-Employee basis**, enable **Order Entry Permissions** only for specific Employees and leave these settings disabled for the Organizations and Products records.

If a user wants to set permissions on a **Product-by-Product basis**, enable **Order Entry Permissions** only for specific products and leave these settings disabled for the Organizations and Employees records.

A user can also utilize the **Employees and Products** permission sets in conjunction (the Employee setting takes precedence over the Product setting). For example, a user can enable these Permissions on Employees records for managers so they can override the price of any product (while leaving these Permissions disabled for non-managers). Then, a user could enable these permissions for specific products whose prices non-managers can override and leave them disabled for products that non-managers cannot override.

Adding Prices to a Product

Each product can support multiple prices based on membership type, order quantity, and/or other order characteristics (such as those identified by a filter rule). Then, when taking an order, Aptify automatically applies correct price based upon the characteristics of the order.

Follow these steps to setup pricing for the product created in Exercise 1:

- 1. On your XYZ Product record, select the Prices>Pricing Table tab.
- 2. Click New to open a new Prices record.
- 3. In the Name field, enter Member.
- 4. In the Price field, enter \$100.00
- 5. From the Member Type drop-down list, select Member (if not already selected).
- 6. From the **Type** drop-down list, select **Base Price**.

Prices record				8
General 🗸				
Name	Member			
Price	\$100.00	Include	es Tax 📄 Default	
Member Type	Member		~	
l	Include Sub-Member Typ	es		
Туре	Base Price 🗸 🗸	% of Base	0	
Start Date	~	End Date	~	
Minimum Quantity	0			
Maximum Quantity	0			
Pricing Rule				Q 🗄
Currency Type	US Dollar			Q 🏢
Derived From Currency				Q 🗄
Description				
			OK AND NEW	OK CANCEL

7. Click the **OK** button.

8. Note how the **Member Price** record appears under the **Prices > Pricing Table** section.

Prices > Pricing Ta	Prices > Pricing Table -			
NEW EDIT DELETE	*	↓ ±		
N	IAME	PRICE		
M	lember		\$100.00	

- 9. Click the New button to create another price record.
- 10. In the Name field, enter Non-Member.
- 11. In the Price field, enter \$0.00.
- 12. From the Member Type drop-down list, select Non-Member (if not already selected).
- 13. From the Type drop-down list, select Percent of Base Price.
- 14. In the % of Base field, enter 200.

Prices record				8
General 🗸				
Name	Non-Member			
Price	\$200.00	Include	es Tax 📄 Default	
Member Type	Non-Member		~	
	Include Sub-Member T	/pes		
Туре	Percent Of Base 🗸 🗸	% of Base	200	
Start Date	~	End Date	~	J
Minimum Quantity	0			
Maximum Quantity	0			
Pricing Rule				Q 🗄
Currency Type	US Dollar			Q 📋
Derived From Currency				Q 🗄
Description				
			OK AND NEW	OK CANCEL

- 15. Click OK to save.
 - Note: the two price records are now linked to the Product record.
 - By choosing **Base** price for the Member and **Percent of Base** for the Non-Member the user can control future price changes by only editing the Base Price.

Note: Filter Rule records can be set up to cross reference specific areas/services to set a particular price. Discounts can be tied to the amount of **Continuing Education Cred**its a **Bill To Persons** has or to number of **Classes** taken in a particular year.

Creating a Related Product Prompt

A Related Product is an additional product that is leveraged as an accessory or a cross-sell product. The related product prompt will appear as pop-up in the **E-Business web site** when an order is placed **online**.

Example: when someone is registering for a class, they might be interested in purchasing a discounted textbook.

- 1. From your XYZ Product record, select the Details >Related Products section.
- 2. Open a new Related Products record.
- 3. In the Related Product hyperlink field, enter Financial Planning
- 4. In the Product Relationship Type field, enter Accessory.
- 5. In the Start Date field, enter today's date (Leave the End Date blank).
- 6. In the **Prompt Text** field, enter **Financial Planning available**.

Related Products record			۲
General 🗸			
Related Product	Financial Planning	Q	Î
Product Relationship Type	Accessory Active	Q	Î
Start Date	01/01/2016		
End Date	V Auto Promot Operator		
Prompt Text	Financial Planning Available.		
Web Prompt Text	Veb Prompt		
	OK AND NEW OK	CANC	EL

- 7. Click OK.
 - When an order is taken for *XYZ* Product later in this class, a pop-up dialog box will appear informing that there are related products available.
- 8. Save and Close the *XYZ* Product record.

Inventory Objectives

When users check the **Require Inventory** button under the **Products**, **Inventory** tab, they **MUST** set up (or no orders can be taken) and understand:

- Creating an Inventory Location (IL)
- Creating a Product Inventory Ledger (PIL)
- Creating a **Product Inventory Ledger Entry (PILE)**

How Aptify tracks inventory

- Optional on a per-product basis
- Membership Dues usually do not have inventory but can, if the number of available memberships is limited
- Inventory is stored in multiple warehouses and transferred between as necessary
- · Inventory records are configured by the organization's Accounting department

3 Services related to Inventory Management:

Inventory Locations (ILs)

- Inventory Location is the location wherethe physical product(s) is housed; can be a storage bin, pallet location in a warehouse, closet, cube, etc.
- For meetings it would be a block of seats available in the meeting room BUT Inventory is auto-generated by the Meeting copy wizard and should NOT be set up with this method.

Product Inventory Ledger (PILs)

- Product Inventory Ledgers are the ledgers for each product that the Inventory Location contains. These Ledgers are used to track the inventory transactions created in the PILES.
- Product inventory ledgers (PIL) are records that track inventory activity for a particular product. Every product must have it's own product inventory ledger. Ledgers are only created once at the creation of a product.

Product Inventory Ledger Entries (PILEs)

- Product inventory ledger entries are the (PILEs) are the individual inventory transactions that track inventory in/out of the ledger there are FOUR types:
 - Purchase: for adding new inventory
 - Transfer: for moving inventory between locations
 - Adjustment: for making corrections or for returning inventory
 - Batch: Removes shipped units from inventory
- Automatically generated during batching process
- Each PILE is tied to a PIL a saved PILE cannot be modified

Creating an Inventory Location

- 1. Click on the **Product Maintenance** dashboard.
- 2. Click on the New Inventory Location button from the dashboard button bar.
- 3. In the Name field, enter *XYZ* Warehouse (*XYZ* = your initials).
- 4. In the Organization field, enter Sampco Holdings.
- 5. Leave Type set to Bin and Status set to Active.
- 6. In the Max Units field, enter 5000.
- 7. In the Replenish Level field, enter 500.
- 8. In the Replenish Quantity field, enter 500.
- 9. In the Manager field, enter John Samuels (this links to the Employees service).
- 10. Click Save.

General 🕶				
Name	XYZ Warehouse			
Description				
Organization	Sampco Holdings, Inc.			Q III
Туре	Bin 🗸	Status	Active	\sim
Max Units	5000	Weight Units	Pounds	\sim
Replenish Level	500	Max Weight	0	
Replenish Quantity	500	Linear Units	Inches	\checkmark
Height	0	Width	0	
Depth	0			
	Allow Direct Fulfillment			
Replenish Source				Q 🗄
Manager	John Samuels			् 📋

Creating a Product Inventory Ledger

A Product Inventory Ledger (PIL) is created to manage and track inventory. Each product for which you track inventory must have a Product Inventory Ledger assigned to it.

- 1. On the Inventory Locations record, click the General drop-down.
- 2. Select Product Inventory Ledger.
- 3. On the far left, click the **New** record button (creates a new Product Inventory Ledger record).
 - Aptify fills in the Inventory Location field automatically since this record was opened from an Inventory Location record. A new Product Inventory Ledger record can be opened directly from the Product Inventory Ledger service.
- 4. In the Product field, enter XYZ Product.
- 5. Click Save.

Note that the Product Inventory Ledger Entries tab is now active:

Product Inventory Location Comments	XYZ Product	t dings, Inc./	XYZ Warehou	se	Q Q	Î
Product Invente	ory Ledger	⁻ Entries	•			
Product Invent	ory Ledg	er Entrie	es Record	s Linked To This Red	cord	
. Z	ii	G	\$	More 🔻		
D ID		PRODUCT	INVENTOR	PRODUCT INVENTORY L	EDG	DATE

Creating a Product Inventory Ledger Entry

Use Product Inventory Ledger Entries (PILEs) to add, transfer, or remove inventory from different locations.

- 1. On the Product Inventory Ledger record created previously, select the **Product Inven**tory Ledger Entries Details drop-down.
- 2. Select Product Inventory Ledger Entries.
- 3. Click the New record button.
 - Aptify auto-fills the Product Inventory Ledger field since this record was opened from a Product Inventory Ledger record. A new Product Inventory Ledger Entries records can be opened directly from the Product Inventory Ledger Entries service.
- 4. In the Description field, enter Add 1000 units.
- 5. In the Quantity field, enter 1000.
- 6. In the Unit Cost field, enter \$20.00.

General 🗸	General 👻			
Product Inv. Ledger	XYZ Product-XYZ Warehouse			
Original PILE	E			
Description	Add 1000 Units			
Date	01/19/2016 🗸	Туре	Purchase	
Quantity	1000			
Unit Cost	\$20.00	Currency Type	US Dollar	
Quantity Balance	0	Entry Qty. Balance	0	

7. Click Save and Close - For the PILE, PIL, and the IL.

- 8. Using Quick Search, find and open your XYZ Product record.
- 9. Click to open the **Inventory** section of the record.
- 10. Notice that the **Quantity On Hand** field reads **1000**.

💾 🗒 🕄 📿 🛕 More 🕶
Name XYZ Product
Category Books/Publications
Type Publication
Parent Product
Inventory -
Quantity On Hand 1000 Quantity Shipped 0
Quantity Reserved 0 Quantity On Order 0
General 🗸
Re-Order Qty. 100 Ave. Lead Time 0
Minimum Stock 500
Notification Employee
Default Inv. Location
Require Inventory
Cost Method Average
Make Internally
Requires Fulfillment
Allow Backorders

General and Prerequisites Sub-tabs

Two additional areas that are useful for product configuration are the **General** and **Prerequi**sites tabs found under the **Details** tab.

Details - General Tab

The **Details - General** tab contains additional information that can be stored, linked, and configured for the product - the most useful of which concerns **Order Lines** generated by purchasing a product.

- 1. Click the **Details > General section.**
- 2. Select the Open Order Line on Add checkbox.
 - Checking this box automatically opens up the Order Line on an Order form when **Add** is clicked (the product is added to order).
 - Feature useful when additional information required on an order:
 - Separate shipping info
 - Booth configuration and/or registrant information
 - Class or Meeting registrant information
- 3. Select the Allow Description Override checkbox.
 - This feature enables users to type over the Product Description that is auto-added when a product is ordered.
 - Useful if particular instructions are needed regarding a particular product on a specific order.

Details > General -		
Торіс	~]
Code		
Organization		Q 🖪
Committee		Q 🗄
Prev. Version		Q 🗄
Base Product	XYZ Product	् 📋
Chapter Assignment Rule	~]
Order Line Description		Q 🗄
Order Line Fields		
	Open Order Line on Add	
	Allow Description Override	

Prerequisites Tab

Prerequisites enables users to set up requirements for a product, for example, clients will only be able to order a product if they meet the prerequisites specified under this tab.

This is most widely used in Aptify for **Classes** under the **Education** module. It is used to set up class curriculum order for the sequencing of classes and is the ONLY place in Aptify this can be set up in non-direct coding process.

- 1. Click the **Prerequisites** tab.
- 2. Select the **Require Prerequisites** check box.
- 3. Observe the **Prerequisites Failure Message** these boxes communicate the exact failure message that will display as a result of a client ordering the product that does **NOT** meet the prerequisites.
 - Failure messages are linked via **Aptify Culture Strings** which are created by **Administrators**. These can easily be created to reflect the desired message.
- 4. Click the Prerequisites Failure Message Add button (right side) to open a blank record.
- In the Name and Base String fields, enter Purchasee must be from the State of to purchase. (In the blank, fill the state of the Persons record created earlier).
- 6. In the Category field, enter products, select Products.
- 7. Click Save and Close.
- 8. Click in the Service Column under the Filter Rules area.
- 9. From the Service field, select Ship To Person.
- 10. In the Field field, enter State.
- 11. In the Operator field, enter Exactly Matches.
- 12. In the Value field, enter the State from step 5 above.
- 13. Save and Close the Products record to activate this function; otherwise, uncheck the Prerequisites box and close the record without saving.

Details > Prerequisites 👻			
Require Prerequisites	Require Prerequisites		
Prerequisites Failure Message	State matches Massachusetts		
Web Prerequisites Failure Message			
ADD ROW X DELETE ROW			
# SERVICE	FIELD		
Logic String CRESET			

Creating a Kit Product

Kits are products that contain two or more products which are sold as a bundle.

Kits often bundle complementary products to provide customers with a price discount when compared to the cost of purchasing each product separately. Products in a kit may also be sold individually depending on the top level item setting.

- 1. Return to the Product Maintenance dashboard.
- 2. Click the New Product button.
- 3. In the Name field, enter *XYZ* Kit Product (*XYZ* = your initials).
- 4. In the Category field, enter Books/Publications.
 - The product **Type** should be set to **General**.
- 5. Click Save.

Assembly Tab

- 1. Select the Assembly section.
- 2. From the **Kit Type** drop-down list, select the **Kit Product** type.
- 3. Click the Assembly Using Inventory From Sub-Products check box.
 - Notice that the Assembly functionality is now active.

1	🛗 🕙 C 🚹 More 🗸						
Name	XYZ Kit Product						
Category	Books/Publications						
Туре	Type Publication V						
Parent Product	Parent Product						
Assembly 🗸							
Kit Type Kit Produ	Kit Type Kit Product						
🗸 Asser	Assemble using Inventory from Sub-Products						
NEW EDIT DELETE 🚰 🛨 🞍							
	SUB PRODUCT QUANTITY % OF REVENUE						

4. In the toolbar, click the New record button to open a Parts record.

- 5. In the Sub Product field, enter XYZ Product.
- 6. In the **Quantity** field, enter **1**.
- 7. In the % of Revenue field, enter 75.

Parts record			8
Sub Product Quantity	XYZ Product 1	Q	Û
% of Revenue Comments	75		
	OK AND NEW OK	CANC	EL

- 8. Click OK.
- 9. Open another new Parts record.
- 10. In the Sub Product field, enter Sampco Baseball Hat.
- 11. In the Quantity field, enter 1. In the % of Revenue field, enter 25.
- 12. Click OK.

Assembly -									
Kit Type Kit Product									
	Assemble using Inventory from Sub-Products								
NEW	NEW EDIT DELETE 🚰 🛨 붚								
		SUB PRODUCT	QUANTITY	% OF REVENUE					
		XYZ Product	1	75					
		Sampco Baseball Hat	1	25					

13. Click Save.

Prices Tab

- 1. Click the Prices>Pricing Table. Click the New record button.
- 2. Enter XYZ Kit Product Member Price. Add a Member Price of \$105 for each kit.
- 3. Click the **OK**. Click the **New** button to create a new prices record.
- 4. Enter a **Non-Member** Price of **\$210** for each kit. Click to select the checkbox to mark this price as the **Default**.
- 5. Click OK. Click Save and Close (the product record).

Product Grouping

- Setup like a Kit product. Easy way to add multiple products to an order in one operation
- Group itself is not added to an order
- Only the individual products in the group
- Products added by group can be removed from order w/out affecting other products.

Chapter 10



Order Entry

Objective	10.1
Orders Overview	10.2
Ordering a Product	10.3
Creating a Multi-Line Order	10.6
Creating a Quotation	10.8
Company Only Orders	10.10
Ordering a Kit Product	10.11
Making a Partial Payment for an Order	10.12
Applying a Discount	10.13
Marking Orders As Shipped	10.14
Cancelling an Order	10.15
Orders Views	10.18

Objective

Once Aptify products, inventory, and prices have been established, an organization's employees can take orders from customers and/or members. In this chapter, users will have the opportunity to work with the Aptify Order Entry system. This includes:

- Types of Orders
- Taking Orders
- Shipping Orders
- Creating a Back Order
- Canceling an Order

Orders Overview

The Aptify Order Entry can process multiple transactions within one order. For example, a service representative could process a new membership, register that individual for a meeting, and sell a book all on one order with one invoice.

In Aptify, all income-generating items are classified as products. This could include booth space at expos, meeting registrations, subscriptions and membership dues, a mug or a hat. Aptify tracks extended information associated with these ransactions within the Product Service/Order Entry system. Information such as the venue for a meeting, the registrants name vs. the payees name, the electric or water needs for a booth setup, etc. can all be included within an order line.

The Aptify Order Entry system also provides full-feature order and payment processing for the following features and capabilities:

- Aptify automatically pulls billing and shipping address information from customer or company records when Orders are shipped, ensuring accuracy and saving order processing time.
- Pricing information is automatically pulled from a Products record. Each product can be configured to have multiple pricing options, which can be associated with different marketing campaigns/member/customer types. The Order Entry system has logic that automatically selects the best price each customer or member is eligible for, and enables price overrides with appropriate permissions.
- Aptify tracks deferred income and automatically generates scheduled transactions over a given time period to recognize the income as it is earned. Income from certain items, such as membership dues and subscription orders, is earned over time and therefore should not be entirely recognized at the time of the order.
- The Order Entry system automatically creates back orders for products that are not currently in stock. The shipping status for regular and back-ordered items is maintained separately so that partial orders can be shipped and invoiced.

Ordering a Product

This section provides hands-on experience ordering a product and understanding the three distinct areas of the Order form: Addressing, Order Lines, and Payments. This example involves ordering a product from a Persons record - Orders could also be processed using:

- E-Business (Aptify's default web site)
- New Order wizard
- · Companies record

Addressing

- 1. Using Quick Search or Recently Used Records Open up your Persons record.
 - The record created in Chapter 3
- 2. From the Actions menu select the Create Order button.
- 3. New Orders record displays. Aptify automatically fills in fields, including:
 - The Ship To information (Name, Company, Address, etc.) s
 - The **Date** field with today's date
- 4. Click the Additional Addresses button (middle screen small icon).
 - Clicking this button displays a drop-down list that contains ALL selectable addresses associated with the Person and the Company.
- 5. Select **Ship To Home Address** to use the address added to the Persons record's Addresses tab in a previous exercise.
 - Ship To address information changes to the Home address. the same address information added to the Ship To section is added to the Bill To section.
- 6. Users can specify different **Bill To** information by removing the check mark from the **Billing Same As Shipping** box and editign the Bill To information.

🔋 New Ord	ders Record X								
8	🛗 🕙 🛕 More 🕶								
Order Entry -	Order Entry - Danube Partners								
Customer 👻									
Order Date Ship To Ship To Company Bill To Bill To Company	e 01/19/2016 V Order Party: Company D Baldwin, Alesha/Danube Partners V Danube Partners Baldwin, Alesha/Danube Partners V Danube Partners D Baldwin, Alesha/Danube Partners V Danube Partners Customer Type: Corporate Member/Member Customer Type: Corporate Country United States V Bad Addresses Country United States	ddress							
Campaign Ship Type Order Source	n Q 目 e U.S. Mail								

Order Lines

- 1. In the Find Products field, enter your XYZ Product, and press the Tab key.
 - If more than one product double click to select, otherwise field will auto-fill.
- 2. The **Quantity** field defaults to **1**. (Editable if needed)
- 3. Click the Add button (right of Quantity).
 - An Order line is <u>added</u> to the form for 1 unit of the **XYZ Product**.



- 4. Note the options far right to Edit, Open and Delete the order line.
- 5. Edit enables the **Description**, **Quantity**, **Price**, and **Discount** (%) of the Order Line to be changed **BUT** only **IF** the user has permissions to do granted on their Employees record.
- 6. Click on the Open Order Lines button.
- 7. The General area enables additional information to be tracked for this order line.

Order Lines record		8
Extended -		
Quantity Inventory Location	1 Price \$100.00 Discount 0 XYZ Organization/XYZ Warehouse Not Returned To Stock	Q. 11
Campaign Code Chapter	Allow Description Override Discount	Q 🗄 Q 🚼 Overridden
Description		
		OK CANCEL

- 8. Click on the General Ship To Section.
- 9. Ship to area enables linking of separate shipping addresses particular to this order line.

Order Lines record	8
Ship To 🗸	
Ship To	Q 🗄
	Ship To Address 🗸 📄
Line 1	
Line 2	
Line 3	
City, State ZIP	
County	
Country	United States V Bad Address
Shipment Type	\checkmark
	OK CANCEL

Payments

- 1. Click Payment Type drop-down, select Visa.
- 2. In the CC Account # field, enter (for Visa: 4 followed by 15 more digits).
- 3. In the CC Exp. Date field, enter [one year from today's date].
 - Outside of training a CSC number would be needed.
 - CC Auth Code is a tokenized CC Number feed received from the Database's designated Authorization Vendor (PayPal or similair).
- 4. Select the **Save for Future Use** check box; this enables reuse of the CC on subsequent orders for the Person or Company without having to re-enter.

Note: Aptify does **NOT** store CC information. On the training server, users can enter any value in the Acct # field since it is not configured to validate credit card numbers through an authorized vendor. On a Production system, users would only use valid credit card numbers provided by a customer/member.

5. Note Order Status Field defaults to Taken.

Payment & Sun	nmary						Total: \$100.00	Balance: \$100.00	
Order Type	Regular	V Order Statu	s Taken	► Ship P	artial	Order Totals Sub-Total	\$100.00		
Payment Type	Visa	× \$×	Initial Payment Amount	\$100.00		Shipping	\$0.00		
CC Account #	49586732456786456		Cash Control	0	} 🗄	Handling	\$0.00		
CC Expiry Date	02/20/2020 🗸	CSC	Payment Schedule Type	None	\sim	Tax	\$0.00		
CC Auth Code			Currency Type	US Dollar	\sim	Total	\$100.00		
CC Auth Type	NA	~	Order Level	Regular	\checkmark	Balance	\$100.00		
Ì	🗸 Save For Future Use to	Person 🗸							
		Person							
		Company							

- 6. Click Save.
 - The Order is now active
 - The Credit Card is validated
- 7. Click on the Order Status dropdown Select Shipped.
 - Accounting is initiated
 - Credit Card is billed.
- 8. Close the Orders record.
- 9. Open the **Product Maintenance Dashboard**, view of **Today's Orders**, note the new order record.

Creating a Multi-Line Order

In this exercise users will enter an order by using the **New Order Wizard**. The New Order Wizard should be the standard method for end users to enter a customer request handled over the phone or in person. It is important to note that ANY order processed using the wizard will only be given a status of **Taken**. Users will have to mark orders as **Shipped** in a separate function.

- 1. From the Home dashboard click on the New Order Wizard button.
- 2. In the Ship To field, enter your Persons name, and select.

New Order Wiza	ard							8
1								
	Specify Custome	er Info		Add P	roducts			Enter Initial Payment
Order Date	01/19/2016	\sim		Order Party :	Company			
Order Type	Regular	\sim		Order Source	Walk-In		\sim	
Ship To	Baldwin, Aiesha/E	Danube Partners	Î	Bill To	Baldwin, Aiesł	a/Danube Partners		
Ship To Company	Danube Partners	•	Ť.	Bill To Company	Danube Partn	ers		
Current Ture	Billing Same a	as Shipping		(Customer Type	Not Available		
Currency Type	US Dollar		\checkmark					
	Urder Addresses	Ship To Address 🗸 🗸	-					
	Line 1	910 Southwest Union Ave	ue					
	Line 2							
	Line 3 City State 7IP	Palo Alto		CA × 9430	1			
	County	Santa Clara						
	Country	United States		V Ba	d Address			
		Ship To Phone 🗸						
		1 650 750-9187	x					
				BACK		хт		
				V	V			

- 3. Click Next.
- 4. In the Find Product box, enter 16 and select the Sampco Glass.
- 5. Click the **Add** button.
 - The 16 oz. shot glass is added as an order line
- 6. In the Find Product box, enter Arm.
- 7. Select the Arm Chair.
- 8. Click the **Add** button.

New Order Wizard						8
_		2				
Specify Customer	Info	Add Pre	oducts			Enter Initial Payment
Customer Type: Not Available Find Product Quantity	1 Qty Avail: ADD C	LEAR SEARCH				DELETE ALL
16oz Sampco Shot Glass (ID: 33)	Description 16oz Sampco Shot Glass	Quantity 1	Price \$16.00	Discount 0.00 %	Extended \$16.00	/ 🛛 😣
Arm Chair (ID: 48)	Description Arm Chair	Quantity 1	Price \$250.00	Discount 0.00 %	Extended \$250.00	/ 🛛 😒

- 9. Click Next.
- 10. Select the Saved Payments icon (\$ sign) next to the Payments Type drop-down.
- 11. Float the cursor over the Persons selection.
- 12. Select the Credit Card information that displays to the right.

New Order Wizar	d			8
Spec	ify Customer Info	Add Products		3 Enter Initial Payment
Payment Type CC Partial CC Expiry Date CC Auth Code CC Auth Type	Visa Visa V S V 4xxxxxxxxxxx8714 02/20/2020 V CSC NA	Total Initial Payment Amount Cash Control Payment Schedule Type Order Level	S266.00 S266.00 None V Regular V Suppress Confirmation	ı Emails
X CANCEL		🗘 ВАСК 🜔 М	EXT	FINISH

- 13. Click the **Finish** button.
- 14. Open the Today's Order's view from the Home Dashboard.
- 15. Ship the Order.

Creating a Quotation

At times, members will call to find out a **Quote** without purchasing the product. Aptify allows end users to create quotations.

- 1. Click on the New Order Wizard button again.
- 2. From the **Order Type** drop-down menu, select **Quotation**.
- 3. In the Ship To field enter your Persons Last Name or ID.
- 4. Click Next.

New Order Wiz	ard	
n		
	Specify Customer Info	
Order Date	01/19/2016	<
Order Type	Quotation	~

- 5. In the Find Product field, enter 21 and select the Sampco Association Journal.
- 6. Click Add.
- 7. Click Next.
- 8. Click Save- quotations do not require payment information.
- 9. Click No in response to create another Order.
- 10. On the Home Dashboard, click the refresh button above the Today's Orders view.
- 11. Note the Order Type column indicating two orders Regular and one Quotation.

Toda	ay's Orders					
		More 🔻				
	ID SHIPTOCOMPANY	SHIPTONAME	BILLTOCOMPANY	BILLTONAME	ORDERTYPE	ORDER STATUS
	10143 Danube Partners	Aiesha Baldwin	Danube Partners	Aiesha Baldwin	Regular	Taken
	10144 Danube Partners	Aiesha Baldwin	Danube Partners	Aiesha Baldwin	Quotation	Taken

12. Double-click the Quotation entry listed last to open the Orders record

- 13. Click on the **Payment & Summary** section to open.
- 14. Change the Order Type from Quotation to Regular.
- 15. Change the Order Status from Taken to Shipped.

yment & Summary					
Order Type Regular	V Order St	atus Shipped	✓ Ship Partia	Order Totals	(
Payment Type Durchage Order		Initial Payment Amount	\$240.00	Sub-Total	\$240.00
Purchase order	~ ⊍ ~	Orah Oratal	3240.00	Shipping	\$0.00
P0 Number		Cash Control		Handling	\$0.00
Terms		Payment Schedule Type	None	- Tax	\$0.00
Due Date	\checkmark	Currency Type	US Dollar 🗸	. Total	\$240.00
		Order Level	Regular 🗸	Balance	\$240.00

- 16. Select Purchase Order from the Payment Type dropdown (if not already selected).
- 17. Enter 34 in the PO Number field.
- 18. Click Save and Close at top left.
- 19. From the dashboard on the My Orders Today view, click the Refresh button
- 20. Note the Quotation is changed to a Regular Order and Status is Shipped.

Company Only Orders

Users can create an order which is placed and purchased by a company, not a specific person at the company. A "Ship To" person is not a required field in this situation.

- 1. Create an order from the New Order Wizard.
- 2. In the Ship To Company field, enter 01 for Danube Partners.
- 3. Notice that the Order form now shows a field labeled, Order Party, Company.
- 4. Order Corporate Membership (ID #1) from the Add Products screen.
- 5. Enter Prepaid Check Check Number 1234 in the Enter Initial Payment screen.
- 6. Finish the order.

ard					
Specify Customer Ir	nfo			Add F	Products
01/19/2016	~			Order Party :	Company
Regular	\checkmark			Order Source	Walk-In 🗸
		Q	+	Bill To	
Danube Partners		Q	+	Bill To Company	Danube Partners
🗸 Billing Same as S	hipping				Customer Type: Not Available
US Dollar		×	/		
	rd Specify Customer Ir 01/19/2016 Regular Danube Partners V Billing Same as S US Dollar	rd Specify Customer Info 01/19/2016 Regular Danube Partners Billing Same as Shipping US Dollar	rd Specify Customer Info 01/19/2016 Regular Danube Partners Billing Same as Shipping US Dollar	rd Specify Customer Info 01/19/2016 Regular Danube Partners Billing Same as Shipping US Dollar	rd Specify Customer Info Add F 01/19/2016 Order Party: Regular Order Source Order Source Bill To Danube Partners O Bill To Company Billing Same as Shipping US Dollar

- 7. Open the Order from My Orders Today view on Home Dashboard (refresh if needed).
- 8. Open the Payments & Summary section.
- 9. Ship and Save the Order.
- 10. Open the Accounting section of the Order and click on the Payments record.
- 11. The **Payments** record will also indicate a **Company Only** status.

Payments ID: 3914 X		
	A More -	
Taken By <u>End User</u> Person [Not Specified] company Danube Partners	Q Image: Organization Sampco Holdings, Inc. Q Image: Payment Party: Company Organization Q Image: Order Search	Q 1
Payment Lines -		
NEW EDIT DELETE A APPLIES TO	IS TAX ORDER LINE #	AMOUNT
10145 Entire Order	0	\$1,500.00

To associate a persons' name with a **Company Only Order**, the companies record contains a field called, **Billing Contact**. This field is located on the **Company** record, **Contact** section at the very bottom of the form. When a company order shipped, this is the contact to whom the order notification is sent.

Ordering a Kit Product

- 1. Open Aiesha Baldwin's record (ID #1).
- 2. From the Actions section, select Create Order.
- 3. From the Order Lines section Add the XYZ Kit Product.
 - The price of the order is the kit price and not the sum of the individual products.
- 4. To the right of the Add button, click either the Expand Kits button or the down arrow.

Order Lines							
Find Product Quantity 1 Qty Avail:	ADD CLE	EAR SEARCH	EXPAND KI	TS		DELE	TE ALL
XYZ Kit Product (ID: 9923) Description	Quantity 1	Price \$105.00	Discount 0.00 %	Extended \$105.00	1	28	•

5. The components of the **Kit** product display.

Order Lines		
Find Product Quantity 1 Qty Avail:	ADD CLEAR SEARCH COLL	APSE KITS
WYZ Kit Product (ID: 9923)	Description	
XYZ Product (ID: 9922)	Description	
Sampco Baseball Hat (ID: 42)	Description Sampco Baseball Hat	

- 6. Next to the **Payments Type** drop-down, select the **Saved Payments** icon.
- 7. Float the cursor over the Persons selection.
- 8. Select the Credit Card information that displays to the right.
- 9. Click Save and Close.
- 10. You will NOT get the option to ship.
- 11. Return to the Home dashboard.
- 12. Click on the Kit order you just create to Open.
- 13. Click on the Payments and Summary section to expand; it is contracted.
- 14. Select Shipped from the Order Status dropdown. Click Yes.
- 15. Save and Close the Order.

Making a Partial Payment for an Order

In some cases, a customer/member may make only a partial or installment payment at the time the order is taken.

- 1. Find and Open Aiesha Baldwin's record from Quick Search.
- 2. From the Actions menu select Create Order.
- 3. Create an order line for 1 unit of your XYZ Product.
- 4. On the Purchase information screen, click to change **Payment Type** to **Pre-Paid Check** and enter a check number.
- 5. Change the **Initial Payment Amount** to half of the amount of the **Balance** due.

Payment & Sur	nmary						
Order Type	Regular	✓ Order Status	Taken	∽ Si	nip Partial	Order Totals Sub-Total	\$100.00
Payment Type	Visa	~ S~	Initial Payment Amount	\$45.00	>	Shipping	\$0.00
CC Partial	4xxxxxxxxxx8714		Cash Control			Handling	\$0.00
CC Expiry Date	02/20/2020 🗸	CSC	Payment Schedule Type	None	\sim	Tax	\$0.00
CC Auth Code			Currency Type	US Dollar	\sim	Total	\$100.00
CC Auth Type	NA	~	Order Level	Regular	~	Balance	\$55.00

- 6. Users can process additional **Payments** by accessing the **Accounting** section of an existing order and creating a new Payment.
- 7. Save and Close.



Applying a Discount

- 1. Enter the Companies record you created earlier in class from the Universal Search.
- 2. From the Company Landing page, select Create Order from the Actions Menu.
- 3. Create an order line for **3** units of your *XYZ* **Product**.
- 4. Click Next.
- 5. At right, click on the Edit Order Line button.
- 6. Change the **Quantity** to **5**.
- 7. In the **Discount** field, enter **25** (indicates percent).

Order Lines		^
Find Product Quantity 1 Qty Avail:	ADD CLEAR SEARCH	DELETE ALL
XYZ Product (ID: 9922) Description	Quantity Price Discount Extended 3 100 25 \$225.00	୕୕

- Notice that the Price has been updated based on the changes made.
- 8. Click OK.
- 9. Set the Payment Type to Pre-Paid Check under the Order's Payment section.
- 10. For the Check Number, enter random numbers.
- 11. Click Save and Close.

Note: Only Employees with permissions set on their Employees records will be able to apply discounts at the Order level.

Marking Orders As Shipped

In Aptify Web, once an order is initially processed and saved, it is designated as Taken. To actually Ship an order, users will need to change the Order Status on the Order form from **Taken** to **Shipped**. For accounting purposes, General Ledger (GL) entries are created once an order is marked as shipped.

- 1. Click on the Home dashboard.
- 2. Open an Order from Today's Orders with an Order Status of Taken.

То	day's	s Order	ſS					
	•	Z	1 🕅 C 🕸 Mo	re 🕶				
		ID	SHIPTOCOMPANY	SHIPTONAME	BILLTOCOMPANY	BILLTONAME	ORDERTYPE	ORDER STATUS
		10143	Danube Partners	Aiesha Baldwin	Danube Partners	Aiesha Baldwin	Regular	Taken
		10144	Danube Partners	Aiesha Baldwin	Danube Partners	Aiesha Baldwin	Quotation	Taken
		10145	Danube Partners	[Not Specified]	Danube Partners		Regular	Shipped

- 3. Expand the Payment & Summary section.
- 4. Click the Order Status drop-down.
- 5. Select Shipped.

Order Type	Regular	V	Order Statu	Shipped	Ship Partial	Order Totals	
	regerer			Talaa		Sub-Total	\$266.00
Payment Type	Visa		~ S~	Taken		Shipping	\$0.00
CC Partial	4xxxxxxxxxxxxx714			Shipped		Handling	\$0.00
00.5	02/20/2020			Back-Ordered		rianding	00.00
CC Expiry Date	02/20/2020	✓ USU		Cancelled	~	Tax	\$0.00
CC Auth Code				conteney type co bondi	~	Total	\$266.00
CC Auth Type	NA		\sim	Order Level Regular	\sim	Balance	\$0.00

- 6. Click Save to update the order.
- 7. Refresh the View and confirm that the **Order Status** is **Shipped** for that Order.

Cancelling an Order

- 1. From the Home dashboard, Today's Orders view, select previously Shipped order.
- 2. Click on the **More** dropdown.
- 3. Select the Order Cancellation Wizard.



4. Review the welcome screen and note that the wizard indicates that it can only be used on orders with a status of **Shipped**.

Intro	Select Original Order	Select Order Lines	Select Refund or Credit	Complete Cancella
This wizard is	designed to assist a user with can	celling an order. It is design	ed to work with all types of orde	rs. Note
This wizard is that orders m	designed to assist a user with can ust be shipped and cannot have pre	celling an order. It is design aviously been cancelled.	ed to work with all types of orde	rs. Note

- 5. click Next.
- 6. Employee should populate automatically based on your user's Employees record.
- 7. Order number should auto-populate Order field based on selection from view.
- 8. From the Cancelation Reason, select Incorrect Product.

Order Cancellation Wizard					8
Ø(
Intro Select Ori	inal Order Se	elect Order Lines	Sele	ect Refund or Credit	Complete Cancellation
Please specify the order which you	vould like to cancel. Als	o, ensure that the valu	e for em	ployee is correctly entere	ed.
Taken B	End User		< Ⅲ		
Orde	r <u>10147</u>		् 🏛		
Cancellation Reaso	Incorrect Product		\sim		
CANCEL	🤤 в.	ack 🛟 NE	хт		

9. Check the XYZ Product order line to indicate that it is being returned.

Intro		Select Origin	al Order	Sele	ct Order Lines		Select Refund or Credi	t Com	plete Cancellatio
Step 2: Specify Please specify or see order line det Check All	Order Lines the of more of O ails, double clic Check None	rderLines to cance k on the desired ro	. Also, indicate the w.	quantity whi	ch should be ca	ncelled. To			
SELECTED	LINE	PRODUCT	PRODUCT D	ESCRIPT	EXTENDED	QUANTITY		CANCEL QUANTIT	Y
			XYZ Product		\$100.00				
∈ ∈ 1	► ►								1 - 1 of 1 items
Return Shipp	ing Charge ellation Fee Pr Product	oduct	Show	Cancellation	I Fee Products				

- 10. Users have several options regarding additional charges/fees at this step:
 - Return the Shipping Charge (checkbox)
 - Include Cancellation Fee Product (checkbox)
 - Select the Cancellation Fee Product (Product dropdown)
 - Enforce a Fee (free text field)
 - View associated Cancellation Fee Products (grey button)
- 11. Click Next to continue.
- 12. Select Keep on Account.
 - Users can either keep cancellation credits on account to apply against future orders (creates a Credit Memo) or can refund the amount.
 - The Refund Amount is automatically calculated to equal the Cancelled Amount. Users can specify a lower refund amount but not a greater one.

Order C	ancellation Wizard				8
			<u> </u>	-4	
	Intro	Select Original Order	Select Order Lines	Select Refund or Credit	Complete Cancellation
	Step 3: Refund or Cred Would you like the result If you select the Keep Or original order. Note that refunds can or Balance Balance Refund	it ing credit to be refunded to th n Account option, you can also nly be issued against the order nt	e customer or retained on ao o choose to create a credit m r's original payment method.	ccount? emo to use the cancellation's credit t See the product documentation for d	o offset a balance left on the etails.
8	ANCEL		🗘 васк 📀	NEXT	

- 13. Click Next to continue.
- 14. Check Review The Created Cancellation Order.

Order Can	cellation Wizard					8
	<u></u>				<u> </u>	5
	Intro	Select Original Order	Select Orde	er Lines	Select Refund or Cree	dit Complete Cancellation
St Yo Er	ep 4: Complete Cance ou are now ready to crea nail Confirmation box.P Suppress Confirmati Review The Created	Ilation ate the cancellation.If you d ress "Finish" to continue. on Emails Cancellation Order	o not want to send a	iny automated em	ail confirmations for thi	s cancellation,check the suppress
	NCEL		🗘 ВАСК	NEXT		SINISH

- 15. Click **Finish** to generate the cancellation order.
- 16. The cancellation order displays.
 - Notice that the quantity of the order line is negative.
 - Notice that the order total is a credit amount.
 - Notice that the cancellation order is linked to the original order (via the **Original Order** field) and the **Order Type** is **Cancellation**.
 - Notice that the payment is a refund amount equal to the cancellation order total. The original order was paid via credit card and the system automatically generated the refund payment to the same CC account.
- 17. Change the Order Status to Shipped and save the order.

A user needs to SHIP cancellation orders for three main reasons:

- Enable Inventory control to inspect the returned product.
- Credit the customers account if product satisfactorily returned.
- Generate GL entries that counter balance the original order's GL entries

/ment & Sun	nmary				
Order Type	Cancellation 🗸	Order Status Shipped	✓ Ship Partia	Order Totals	
				Sub-Total	(\$100.00)
ayment Type	Purchase Order	 S Initial Payment Amount 	(\$100.00)	Shipping	\$0.00
PO Number	N/a	Cash Control		Handling	\$0.00
Terms		Payment Schedule Type	None 🗸	Tax	\$0.00
Due Date	~	Currency Type	US Dollar 🗸 🗸	Total	(\$100.00)
		Order Level	Regular 🗸	Balance	(\$100.00)

- 18. Save and Close the cancellation order.
- 19. Click No when prompted if you want to cancel another order.
- 20. Note change in views: Orders and My Payments Last 7 Days.
 - Order Type should show Cancellation.

Orders Views

From the Quick Search, enter the text Find Orders.

Several selections will display:

Find Orders - Brings back a list of orders by prompted value.

Find Orders Revenue (BASE VIEW) - Brings back a Base View containing all orders AND order lines. When a NON-Orders-Order Lines view is run, it only returns the FIRST line of an order in the View. The Find Orders Revenue (BASE VIEW) displays ALL order lines and the results could contain multiple lines with the same order ID, but showing separate products per line.

Examples are included here for replication and use, but can be expanded upon for more in depth analysis. Users can add their own desired prompts, fields, sorting, etc. by copying and editing the Properties of any of these views.

- 1. Select the Find Orders Revenue View
- 2. Enter 42 in the Product ID prompt.
- 3. Observe the **Results**.
 - Observe there are two **10113** Order IDs listed each for a different Order Line. The same product on separate Order Lines indicates that the person ordering wished to ship them to separate locations which can be done via an Order Line.

Find Orders Revenue (BASE VII Product ID: 42	EW) Product:	Product> Bill To Name: <bill name="" to=""> Bill T</bill>	'o Company:	<bill company<="" th="" to=""><th>0</th><th>Ship To Nam</th><th>e: <ship name="" to=""></ship></th><th>Ship To Company: <\$hip</th><th>Fo Company></th><th>GO CAI</th><th>NCEL</th></bill>	0	Ship To Nam	e: <ship name="" to=""></ship>	Ship To Company: <\$hip	Fo Company>	GO CAI	NCEL
📙 🗹 🛗 🏛 C	🕼 More 🕶										
PRODUCT	SHIP TO NAME	SHIP TO COMPANY	QUANTITY	PRODUCT ID	PRICE	DISCOUNT	LINE EXTENDED PRICE	LINE DISCOUNT AMOUNT	ORDER DATE	ORDER STATUS	ID
A Sampco Baseball Hat	Aiesha Baldwin	Danube Partners	1	42	0.00	0	0.00	0.00	01/12/2016	Shipped	10128
A Sampco Baseball Hat	Aiesha Baldwin	Danube Partners	1	42	0.00	0	0.00	0.00	01/12/2016	Shipped	10127
A Sampco Baseball Hat	Baka Lambert	Ottoman	1	42	19.95	0	19.95	0.00	04/27/2015	Shipped	10114
A Sampco Baseball Hat	Emily Robinson	VC Osaka Technologies Group, Inc.	1	42	19.95	0	19.95	0.00	04/27/2015	Shipped	10113
A Sampco Baseball Hat	Emily Robinson	VC Osaka Technologies Group, Inc.	1	42	19.95	0	19.95	0.00	04/27/2015	Shipped	10113
A Sampco Baseball Hat	Aiesha Baldwin	Danube Partners	1	42	19.95	0	19.95	0.00	02/26/2014	Shipped	10094

Chapter 11



Payments

Objective	11.1
Making a Payment	11.2
Multiple Payments to One Order	11.3
A Single Payment to Multiple Orders	11.5
Over Payments	11.6
Payments Views	11.7

Objective

In this chapter, you will apply payments towards existing orders. The objective of this section is to demonstrate the multiple ways of applying payments.

Payments Overview

Payments are taken at the time of the order

- Using the Order Summary area
- All orders require an initial payment or Purchase Order number with approved credit before it can be saved
- System automatically creates a Payments record based on this information

The Payments service can be used to create additional payments

- When a customer pays off a purchase order
- When a customer, who made an initial payment, pays off an entire balance
- When a customer who made an initial payment pays periodic installments to cover remaining balance

Making a Payment

Payment & Summary Area on an Order Record

Users should access the Payment & Summary area to input the initial payment on an order.

Order Entry - Danube Partners							
Utilitationer Order Dies (17/19/2016) Vorder Part Ship To Company Databal Partners Ship To Company Databal Partners Bill To Company Databal Partners Bill To Company Catabal Partners Catabal Partners Bill To Company Catabal Partners Catabal Partners Bill To Company Catabal Partners Catabal Partner	y. Company Q III III V Q III Q III V	Older Addresses SND TO Addresses SND TO Address No To Addr	CA 94301 CA 94301 Bad Addre x				
Order Lines Prid Product Quantity 1 Oty Avait: Quantity 1 Oty Avait: Quantity 1 For Shot Glass (ID: 3)	ADD CLEAR SI Description 16oz Sampco	EARCH Shot Glass	Quantity 1 Quantity	Price \$16.00 Price	Discount 0.00 % Discount	Extended \$16.00 Extended	
Payment & Summary	Arm Chair		1	\$250.00	0.00%	\$250.00	Total: \$266.00 Balance: \$
Order Type Regular	Order Status Taken	Ship Partial	Order Totals Sub-Total \$266.00				
Payment Type Visa OC Partial Acconcocccc8714 CC Expiry Date 62/20/2020 CSC CC Auth Code	V SV Initial Pa Payment	yment Amount \$266.00 Cash Control	Shipping \$0.00 Handling \$0.00 Tax \$0.00 Total \$266.00				
CC Auth Type NA Save For Future Use to Person	~	order Level Regular	Balance \$0.00				

Users can open a separate **Payments** Record (from the **Payments** service) to record an installment payment or balance payoff.

Payments Record

When an order is taken with an initial payment made, the system automatically generates a Payments record under the Accounting, Orders Payments area.

Payments ID: 3913 X	
11 13 13 11 4 C	▲ More ▼
Taken By <u>End User</u> Person <u>Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners</u> Company <u>Danube Partners</u>	Q Image: Transmission of the system of the
Payment Lines - NEW EDIT DELETE 🛧 🛧 🕹	
OR APPLIES TO IS TAX OR 10 Entire Order 0	AMOUNT PAYMENT AMOU COMMENTS \$266.00 \$266.00 Payment on Order ID: 10143

Payment Lines - reflect payment made to the order. Automatically assumes full payment.

If not full payment, a user can double click the item and change the information.

If a user knows who the order the payment is for, the accounting tab of that order can be used to generate this form.
Multiple Payments to One Order

Applying Multiple Payments to an Order

- 1. Create a new Order from a Aiesha Baldwin's landing page.
- 2. Order The Sampco Way (product ID #24). Click Next.
- 3. In the Payment and Summary section, enter the saved credit card information.
 - Note that the Initial Payment Amount field changes from grayed out to active
- 4. In the Initial Payment Amount, enter \$75.00 (roughly half of the total).

Order Type	Regular		Order Status	Shinned	~	Ship Partial	Order Totals	
	Regular	•		ompped	*		Sub-Total	\$150.00
Payment Type	Visa		✓ S √	Initial Payment Amount	\$75.00		Shipping	\$2.00
CC Partial	4xxxxxxxx8714			Cash Control			Handling	\$1.00
CC Expiry Date	02/20/2020	✓ C:	SC	Payment Schedule Type	None	\checkmark	Tax	\$0.00
CC Auth Code				Currency Type	US Dollar	\checkmark	Total	\$153.00
CC Auth Tuna	NA			Order Level	Regular	\sim	Delenee	A70.00

- 5. Click Save.
- 6. Change the Order Status to Shipped.
- 7. Save and Close the Order.
- 8. Return to the Home Dashboard.
- 9. Refresh the Today's Orders View; double-click to open the Order just created.
- 10. At the record top, left, click **Customer** drop-down; click the **Accounting** tab.
- 11. Double click the Payment Lines Record that displays.
 - Note the indication that a partial payment has been made.

Taken By	End User				Q	Û	Org	anization	<u>Sampco H</u>	oldings, Inc.	Q	Û
Person	Baldwin, Aiesha	a/Danube F	artners		Q	Û	Payn	nent Party:	Company			
Company	Danube Partner	r <u>s</u>			Q	Î.	Orde	r Search	Order	# Invoice #		
Payment	Payment Lines 🗸											
NEW EDI	T DELETE	t	₽ 1	2								
OR	APPLIES TO	IS TA	x	OR	AMO	UNT		PAYMENT	AMOU	COMMENTS		
10	Entire Order			0		\$75	5.00		\$75.00	Partial Payment on Order ID:	10149	

12. Close the Payments record.

- 13. From the displayed **Order**, **Accounting** section, click **New** under the **Payments** area to create a new, second Payments record for this Order.
- 14. The system will auto-fill the Order number and the remaining order payoff Amount.
 - Users can open the payement line to edit the remaining amount or have it applied only to a particular order line.
 - Individual Order Line payment can be used in situations where a company admin orders products on behalf of individuals who must in turn submit separate payments towards the order for their individual product.

Taken By End User	Q 📋 Organization	Sampco Holdings, Inc.
Person Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners	🔍 🏢 🛛 Payment Party:	Company
Company Danube Partners	Order Search	. Order # Invoice #
Payment Lines 🕶		
New Edit delete 🛧 🛧 🚽		
OR APPLIES TO IS TAX OF	AMOUNT PAYMEN	T AMOU COMMENTS
10 Entire Order 0	\$78.00	\$78.00 Payment on Order ID:10149

15. Click OK.

- 16. Select the Details section.
- 17. Enter payment information.

Taken By <u>End User</u> Person <u>Baldwin, Aiesha/I</u> Company <u>Danube Partners</u>	Danube Partners		0, 0, 0,	Organization S Payment Party: Order Search	Sampco Holdings, Inc. Company Order # Invoice #	, 11
Details 👻						
Payment Status	Posted	~		Payment Type	Visa 🗸 🗸	•
Payment Level	Regular	~		CC Partial	4xxxxxxxxx8714	
Cash Control Batch		Q 🗄		CC Expiry Date	02/20/2020 V CSC	
Payment Date	01/19/2016	\sim		CC Auth Code		
Deposit Date	01/19/2016	~		CC Auth Type	NA	-
Effective Date	01/19/2016	\sim				
Currency Type	US Dollar	~				
Original Payment						
	Refund					
Service Charge Account		~			Defund This Dayment	
Service Charge	\$0.00					
Status Info						

- 18. Click Save to finalize the payment.
- 19. From the Home dashboard, refresh the Today's Orders view.
- 20. Observe the **Balance** has been reduced from the original charge (based on the amount entered for partial payment).

A Single Payment to Multiple Orders

By using the Payments service, users are able to apply a single payment to multiple orders. The Payments service is found under the Order Entry application.

- 1. From a persons landing page, Actions menu, Create Order.
- 2. Order and Ship the XYZ Kit Product TWICE on separate Orders.
- 3. Use a **Payment Type** of **Purchase Order** for both orders.
- 4. Go to Home dashboard, Todays Orders view.
- 5. Write down the last <u>TWO</u> Order IDs: _____
- 6. From the Home dashboard button bar, select New Payment.
- 7. Click on he Order Search button..
- 8. Enter and click on the first Order ID from step 5 in the Find Orders Record field.
- 9. Click the **Select** button.
- 10. The Order will display below the **Payment Lines** section.
- 11. Repeat steps 7-9 for the second Order.
- 12. Click the Details section.

Taken By End User			0	Î.	Organization	Sampco Holding	s, Inc.			Q	Î
Person Baldwin, Aiesha/I	anube Partners		Q	Î	Payment Party:	Company					
Company Danube Partners			Q	Î	Order Search	Order #	Invoice #				
Details -											
Payment Status	Posted	V]		Payment Type	Visa			V	<u>s</u> ~]
Payment Level	Regular	~			CC Partial	4xxxxxxxxxxxxx	714				
Cash Control Batch		۹.			CC Expiry Date	02/20/2020	~	CSC			
Payment Date	01/19/2016	~			CC Auth Code						
Deposit Date	01/19/2016	~			CC Auth Type	NA				~	
Effective Date	01/19/2016	~									
Currency Type	US Dollar	V									
Original Payment											
	Refund										
Service Charge Account		V						0-6	TL:- D.		
Service Charge	\$0.00							Rerund	mis Pa	syment	
Status Info											

- 13. Enter the saved payment type.
- 14. Click Save and Close.
- 15. Return to the Home dashboard.
- 16. Refresh Today's Orders view.- observe the two orders Balance Totalsi are now \$0.00.

Over Payments

At times, a user may receive payments in the mail that are written for more than the balance due on orders. Aptify will allow processing of an overpayment. The overpayment will be considered a **Credit Memo.** The Credit Memo can be applied for future purchases by linking the credit order to a new Orders record.

In this exercise, a user will process an overpayment for an order and create a credit memo.

- 1. Create a new Order for one unit of the Sampco Baseball Hat product.
- 2. Enter a **PO** payment type with the PO number of **778**.
- 3. Save but do not close the order.
- 4. Select the Accounting tab and then click the Order Payments sub-tab.
- 5. Select the New Record icon.
 - A new Payments record appears, with a payment line for the balance on the order.
- 6. Double-click the payment line to open the **Payment Lines** record.
- 7. Edit the **Comments** field to indicate that this payment line applies to 1 unit of *Sampco Baseball Hat* product. Click **OK** to close this record.
- 8. To open a second **Payment Lines** record, Click the **New Record** button.
- 9. In the Order field, enter the Order ID for the order opened in Step 1.
- 10. Leave the Applies To set to Entire Order.
- 11. In the Amount field, enter \$200.
- 12. In the Comments field, Enter Customer Overpayment.
- 13. Click **OK**.
 - The Payment Total updates to \$200 greater than the order amount.
- 14. Select the **Details** tab.
- 15. From the Payment Type drop-down list, select Pre-Paid Check.
- 16. In the Check Number field, enter a check number.
- 17. Click Save and Close.
- 18. Click Save on the Orders record.
 - Notice that the Balance on the order has been updated to (200.00), indicating that the Person has a \$200 credit. This order can be referenced as a Credit Memo to pay for another order from the same **Person** or **Company**.

Payments Views

From the Quick Search, enter the text Find Payments

Several possible selections will display:

Find Payments - Brings back a list of orders by prompted value.

Find Payments by Date Range - Brings back a list of orders by a specified date range.

Find Payments by Date Range AND - Brings back a list of orders by a specified date range AND one prompted value.

These examples are included here for replication and use, but can be expanded upon for more in depth analysis. Users can add their own desired prompts, fields, sorting, etc. by copying and editing the Properties of any of these views.

- 1. Select the Find Payments View
- 2. Enter Danube in the Company Name prompt.
- 3. Observe the **Results**..

Find P	Payment Paid By:	S <persor< th=""><th>1></th><th>Company Name: Danube</th><th>Order ID: 0</th><th>Type Begins With <type></type></th><th>GO CANCEL</th><th></th></persor<>	1>	Company Name: Danube	Order ID: 0	Type Begins With <type></type>	GO CANCEL	
	Z		1 C 🕸	More 🕶				
			ID	PAYMENT DATE	PAIDBY	COMPANYNAME	STATUS	PAYMENT TYPE
^			1247	04/15/2007 09:23:45 PM	Aiesha Valdez	Danube Partners	Batched	Visa
^			1351	04/15/2007 09:23:45 PM	Mia Holland	Danube Partners	Batched	Visa
^			1437	04/15/2007 09:23:45 PM	Alexander Neal	Danube Partners	Batched	Visa
^			1536	04/15/2007 09:23:45 PM	Michael Gamer	Danube Partners	Batched	Visa
^			1647	04/15/2007 09:23:45 PM	Theodore Byrd	Danube Partners	Batched	Visa
^			1691	04/15/2007 09:23:45 PM	Jessica Rodriquez	Danube Partners	Batched	Visa
^			1776	04/15/2007 09:23:45 PM	Andrew O'Neal	Danube Partners	Batched	American Express
^			2944	07/16/2007 09:25:27 PM	Gabriela Mann	Danube Partners	Batched	Pre-Paid Check
^			1809	11/01/2007 09:24:41 PM	Kaitlyn Scott	Danube Partners	Batched	Mastercard

Chapter



12

Membership Dues & Subscriptions

Objective	12.1
Creating a Membership Dues Product	12.3
Ordering a Membership Dues Product	12.6
Membership Enrollment Wizard	12.7
Manually Renewing Memberships/Subscriptions	12.9
Auto-Renewing Memberships/Subscriptions	12.11
Fulfilling the Auto-Renewal Standing Order	12.12
Cancelling a Membership/Subscription	12.14
Membership Views	12.17

Objective

In Associations and Membership based organizations, the core around which the organization functions is Membership. In Aptify, Membership is considered a Subscription based product due to the tracking of deferred income.

The Subscriptions service keeps track of products sent to a Person on a recurring basis, such as membership, magazines, newsletters, or journals. Unlike a regular product item, a subscription product has the ability to track persons who are purchasing future issues and fulfill their orders based on their status.

Aptify enables users to create "extended" products that support additional product features based on the product type. Extended products, however, can also be a subscriptions product and sent to a customer regularly. A membership or a monthly journal are examples of extended, subscription products.

In this chapter, users will primarily be focused on Membership Subscription products/orders, but some of these same steps/processes can be applied to Magazines, Periodicals, Newsletters, etc.

Two Types of Subscriptions

- Manually renewed Membership Subscription
 - Subscription is ordered
 - Subscription is shipped
 - User Opens up a monthly view of Subscriptions for desired month
 - User runs the Subscription Renewal Wizard from View's toolbar
 - Order Quotations are generated for that Subscription
 - User generates invoices and sends them to customers
 - Upon receipt of new payment, user changes Subscription order from status of Quotation to Shipped

• Auto-renewed Membership Subscription

- Subscription is ordered
- User opens up the Order line for the Subscription
- User puts check mark in the Auto Renew check box on the Subscription tab
- Subscription is shipped
- User can open up the Subscription order that was generated
- User can open the Renewal tab & click the Standing Order link to modify:
 - Date Expires (match CC info/desired length of subscription)
 - Schedule
 - Order Information (change recipients)
- User runs Standing Order Fulfillment Wizard periodically to fulfill subscriptions that have associated standing orders

Membership Subscription Length/Number of Copies

Same basic order process as for other product types except:

- Changes in an order line Quantity increase length of subscription
 - For example, ordering a Monthly Newsletter with a quantity of 2 creates a two-year subscription
- Ordering multiple copies of each issue for same Person/Company
 - Known as a "Bulk Subscription"
 - Specify number of copies on Order Line Details form
- Order Total increases automatically if the number of copies increases.

Creating a Membership Dues Product

- 1. Click the Product Maintenance Application; open a new Products record.
- 2. In the Name field, enter XYZ Membership Dues (where XYZ are your initials).
- 3. In the Category field, enter Memberships.
- 4. Verify that **Type** is set to **General**.
- 5. Click the General tab; under the Subscription tab, click General.
- 6. Check the Subscription Item checkbox.
- 7. From the Subscription Type drop-down list, select Monthly.
- 8. In the **Issues** field, enter **12**.
 - The Subscription Type is set to Monthly with 12 issues for a one-year membership to comply with General Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP). This enables the system to track the product for Deferred Income.
- 9. In the Grace Period field, enter 1.
- 10. Verify that the **Restart After Days** field is set to **180**.
- 11. Verify that the **Restart By** field is set to **Continue Existing Subscription**.

TYZ Membership Dues (ID: 9947) X
🛗 🛗 🚱 C 👍 More 🕶
Name XYZ Membership Dues Category Memberships Type General Parent Product Q
Subscription > General -
Subscription Item Subscription Item Issues 12 Grace Period 1 Renewal Behavior Restart After Days 180 Restart By Continue Existing Subscription Show Prompt
Calendar Year Subscription Start Date Turnover Date Prorate Behavior None

- 12. Under the Subscription tab, click the Membership tab.
- 13. In the **Dues Product** check box, **click to select**.
- 14. In the Member Type field, enter Member
- 15. Leave the Member Start Date field set to Use Subscription Settings.

Subscription > Membership -							
Vues Product							
Member Type	Member	\sim					
Member Start Date	Use Subscription Settings	~					

16. Click the Accounting tab and verify that the Deferred Income check box is checked.

Accountin	ng > General -	
Invoice Type	Standard Taxable Revenue Recognition Cash Basis Acctg Rev. Rec. Date	>

- 17. Select the **Prices** tab, **Pricing Table**.
- 18. Click New to create a new Prices Record.
- 19. Add Member-Renewal price of \$250 Member Type -Member.

Prices record			8
General 🗸			
Name	Member Renewal		
Price	\$250.00	Includes Tax	Default
Member Type	Member		\sim
	🔽 Include Sub-Member Typ	bes	
Туре	Regular 🗸	% of Base 0	
Start Date	~	End Date	~
Minimum Quantity	0		
Maximum Quantity	0		
Pricing Rule			Q 1
Currency Type	US Dollar		Q 1
Derived From Currency			Q 1
Description			
		OK AND NEW	OK CANCEL

- 20. Add Non-Member Join price of \$500 click Default Member Type to Non-Member
- 21. Save and Close.

Prices	Prices > Pricing Table -									
NEW	EDIT DELETE T	€ ±								
	NAME PRICE		INCLUDES TAX	MEMBER TYPE						
	Member Renewal	\$250.00		Member						
	Non-Member Join	\$500.00		Non-Member						

Understanding Membership/Subscription Dates

By default, a subscription in Aptify begins on the date the order is taken and ends when all the issues have been fulfilled or the subscription is canceled. However, if a subscription or membership is annual, a user can specify a **Start Date** and **Turnover Date** in the subscription's Products record to create a renewal range.

- Any membership subscription created after the current Start Date but before the next Turnover Date is assigned the current year's subscription.
- Any membership subscription created after the Turnover Date and before the next Start Date is assigned next year's subscription.

For example, if the current membership subscription cycle started on January 1st and the next turnover date is March 31st, a subscription order placed on March 15th would have a start date of January 1st. The subscriber may receive back issues for the first three months of that year and then continue to receive monthly issues for the rest of the subscription period depending on the organization's business practice.

An order for the same product taken on April 1st would begin on January 1st of the following year because the order was taken after the turnover date.

If no dates are entered in the Start Date and Turnover Date fields, a subscription begins on the date the order is taken and ends when all the issues have been fulfilled or the subscription is canceled.

Understanding Membership/Subscription Renewals

Organizations can determine how to handle lapsed subscriptions using the subscription product's **Renewal Behavior** settings. For example, an organization may wish to treat a renewal that is less than 60 days late as part of the original subscription, while classifying renewals after 60 days as new subscriptions.

Suppose, for example, that a customer wishes to renew their membership after it has lapsed for one year. Users would not want the subscription start date to be the end of their last subscription, since then their membership would expire immediately. In this case, the membership should be treated as a new subscription.

Alternatively, if a customer is only 30 days past due for renewing, an organization may wish to consider any membership purchase as a renewal, since the organization may offer benefits for maintaining continuous membership.

Note that while the system changes the Member Type of a Persons record or Companies record to a member status when the membership product is purchased, it does not change the Member Type back to a non-member status when the membership expires. This allows for an arbitrary grace period to be established. A view can be set up to list all persons or companies whose memberships have expired for *X* number of days, and then manually change their membership status back to a non-member type. Alternatively administrators can create an Entity Bulk Operation to update records in one operation.

Ordering a Membership Dues Product

This exercise demonstrates how a Non-Member places an order for a membership dues product and how Non-Member status automatically changes to Member status.

- 1. Open your Persons record.
- 2. Observe the current Membership Status on the Landing Page.
- 3. Verify that the Individual Membership Type is Non-Member.
- 4. Float the cursor over the **Dues Information** linked field.

CONTACT INFORMATION		MEMBERSHIP STATUS
XYZ Corporation Sabrina Hill XYZ Corporation		Individual Membership: Non-Member Company Membership: Corporate Member
1500 Demo Drive Salt Lake City, UT 90152 United States <u>Sabrina.Hill@demodata.aptify.</u> (215) 252-1111	Join [Dues Paid T Last Pay [Last Dues Amo	Dues Information Date Thru Date Date Sount \$0.00

- 5. Click on the Actins Create Order button.
- 6. Create an order line for 1 unit of XYZ Membership Dues.
- 7. Enter Payment information.
- 8. Click Save.
- 9. Change the status to **Shipped**.
- 10. Save and Close the Orders record.
- 11. Open your Persons record from Home Recently Used Records.
- 12. Verify that the Individual Membership Type has changed to Member.
- 13. Float the cursor over the **Dues Information** linked field it is updated.

CONTACT INFORMATION	MEMBERSHIP STATUS
XYZ Corporation	Individual Membership: Member
Sabrina Hill	Company Membership: Corporate Member
1500 Demo Drive	Dues Information
Salt Lake City, UT 90152	Join Date 01/19/2016
United States	Dues Paid Thru 01/18/2017
Sabrina.Hill@demodata.aptiry.com	Last Pay Date 01/19/2016
(215) 252-1111	Last Dues Amount \$250.00

Membership Enrollment Wizard

A membership order can be also be entered with the Membership Enrollment Wizard for persons or companies. The steps are similar to the New Order Wizard. The following instructs how to order membership for an individual.

- 1. From the Membership Application, click the Membership Enrollment Wizard.
- 2. To enroll an individual, enter No Company. Click Next.

Membership Er	nrollment Wizard				8			
0								
Company Selection	New Company Information	Person Selection	New Person Information	Person Credit Information	Product and Payment			
Welcome to the Me orders for new or e Company, Existing	Welcome to the Membership Enrollment wizard! This wizard lets you easily create membership orders for new or existing Persons and Companies. To begin, select a company option below: New Company, Existing Company, or No Company (for individual membership purchases). Select the company you would like to enroll.							
Co	mpany		Q 🕂					
Company	Mode No Company		~					
CANCEL		🕞 ВАСК	O NEXT					

- 3. Enter ID 05, Dacye Yukon..
- 4. Click Next.



- 5. Enter Individual membership.
- 6. Click Finish.

Membership Enrollme	nt Wizard				8
					6
Company Selection	New Company Information	Person Selection	New Person Information	Person Credit Information	Product and Payment
CustomerType:	Not-Available / Non-	Member			
on the membership on the membership new order so you co order. Then, save th	orsprayed in the Product actual price that the men o order's characteristics. an modify any informatic ie order.	on op-down inst is the produ- nber will be charged for th After completing this step on as necessary and add P	e product will vary based the wizard will open the ayment details to the		
Membership Dues Product Membership Type	Individual Membership				
CANCEL		🔿 васк	NEXT		FINISH

- 7. An Order for **Membership** displays.
- 8. Enter Payment.
- 9. Change Order Type from Quotation to Regular.
- 10. Change Order Status to Shipped.
- 11. Click Save and Close.

Customer 👻							
Order Date (Ship To 2 hip To Company (Bill To 2 Bill To Company (Bill To Company (Campaign (Ship Type (01/19/2016 V C Yukon, Dasey/Polyhedron Pcy Polyhedron Power Devices Silling Same as Shipping Yukon, Dacey/Polyhedron Pcy Polyhedron Power Devices Dustomer Type: Non-Member U.S. Mail	Irder Party: Company wer Devices Q II wer Devices /Non-Member	- Order Add	resses Ship To Address Ship To Address ine 1 8383 North Colombo St ine 2 Suite 235 e ZIP Milipitas Sunty Santa Clara untry United States Ship To Phone 1 408 692-3824	v e	 ✓ 95035 ✓ Bad Address 	s
Ulder Source	waik-in	v					
Order Lines	Quantity 1 Qty embership (ID: 2)	Avail: ADD	CLEAR SEARCH			Quantity	Price
Find Product	Quantity 1 Qty lembership (ID: 2)	Avail: ADD Di In	CLEAR SEARCH escription dividual Sub: Dacey Yuko	on. Start: 1/19/2016 # Copies:	1	Quantity 1	Price \$250.00
Payment & St.	Quantify 1 Qty tembership (ID: 2) Immary	Avail: ADD Du	CLEAR SEARCH escription dividual Sub: Dacey Yuko	on. Start: 1/19/2016 # Copies:	1 Order Totals	Quantity 1	Price \$250.00
Payment & Su Order Typ	Quantity 1 Qty lembership (ID: 2) 	Avail: ADD D In V Order State	CLEAR SEARCH escription dividual Sub: Dacey Yuko	on. Start: 1/19/2016 # Copies:	1 Order Totals Sub-Total	Quantity 1 \$250.00	Price \$250.00
Payment & SL Order Typ Payment Type	Quantity 1 Qty lembership (ID: 2) ummary e Regular : Pre-Paid Check	Avail: ADD In Vorder State	CLEAR SEARCH escription dividual Sub: Dacey Yuko Ja Shipped Initial Payment Amou	on. Start: 1/19/2016 # Copies:	1 Order Totals - Sub-Total Shipping	Quantity 1 \$250.00 \$0.00	Price \$250.00
Payment & St. Order Typ Payment Type Check Number	Quantity 1 Oty lembership (ID: 2) mmary e Regular : Pre-Paid Check r [23423	Avail: ADD D In V Order Stat	CLEAR SEARCH escription dividual Sub: Dacey Yuko Ja Shipped Initial Payment Amou Cash Contr	on. Start: 1/19/2016 # Copies: Ship Partial mt \$250.00 ol Q #	1 Order Totals Sub-Total Shipping Handling	Quantity 1 \$250.00 \$0.00 \$0.00	Price \$250.00
Payment & St. Payment & St. Order Typ Payment Type Check Number Bank	Quantity 1 Oty lembership (ID: 2) mmary e Regular t Pre-Paid Check t 23423 t	Avail: ADD D In Order Statt	CLEAR SEARCH escription dividual Sub: Dacey Yuko us Shipped Initial Payment Amou Cash Contr Payment Schedule Typ	on. Start: 1/19/2016 # Copies: Ship Partial nt \$250.00 ol Q # None V	1 Order Totals Sub-Total Shipping Handling Tax	Quantity 1 \$250.00 \$0.00 \$0.00 \$0.00 \$0.00	Price \$250.00
Payment & SL Product Payment & SL Order Typ Payment Type Check Number Bank Account Number	Quantity 1 Qty Iembership (ID: 2)	Avail: ADD In V Order Stati	CLEAR SEARCH escription dividual Sub: Dacey Yuko us Shipped Initial Payment Amou Cash Contr Payment Schedule Tyg Currency Tyg	on. Start: 1/19/2016 # Copies:	1 Order Totals Sub-Total Shipping Handling Tax Total	Quantity 1 \$250.00 \$0.00 \$0.00 \$0.00 \$0.00 \$0.00	Price \$250.00

Manually Renewing Memberships/Subscriptions

The Subscription Renewal Wizard examines a Subscriptions record and generates a quotation order for the Subscription product. Once the Quotation is created and a customer indicates they wish to renew, users can change the quotation order to a regular order, and renew the subscription.

Aptify recommends configuring the messaging system to automatically email customers whose subscription will soon expire, reminding them to renew. This can be done by creating a view of subscriptions that will end within a certain time frame, and using the Subscription Renewal Wizard to create quotation orders for each subscription.

Users can then create a view of quotation orders and send a pre-configured message to each person associated with the orders. Different messages may be sent depending on when the subscription will expire, so that customers know when they must renew by, as well as how to renew.

Follow the steps below to manually renew a subscription:

- 1. Use Quick Search to find and open the All Active Subscriptions view.
- 2. Select the first Membership Dues subscription (from recent Membership purchase).
- 3. Click the More button.
- 4. Select Renew Subscriptions.

All Active	Subscriptions			
. 2		C 🕸	More 🔻	
0	SUBSCRIBER	SUBSCF	Record History	PRODUCT
V 1923	Dacey Yukon	Polyhed	Export to Excel Reports	Individual Membership
1922	Sabrina Hill	XYZ Cor	Add To List	XYZ Membership Dues
1921	Aiesha Baldwin	Danube	Add To Favorites	XYZ Membership Dues
1920	Habika Harris	X.E. Awa	Add View To Favorites	Corporate Membership
1919	James Hill	Island	Renew Subscriptions	Student Membership
120	[Not Specified]	Danube F	Partners	Corporate Membership

5. When prompted that the user is renewing 1 subscription, click Next.

enew Subscriptions		
Start	Select Due Date	Confirm
This wizard will renew subscription view will be renewed. Click next to	ns for the current selected items. If no item se continue.	elected, the entire contents of this
This wizard will renew subscription view will be renewed. Click next to	ns for the current selected items. If no item se continue.	elected, the entire contents of this
This wizard will renew subscription view will be renewed. Click next to	ns for the current selected items. If no item se continue.	elected, the entire contents of this

6. In the **Due Date** field when prompted, enter the last date of next month.



7. Click **Next** to continue.

Renew Subscriptions		\otimes
		3
Start	Select Due Date	Confirm
This wizard will renew 1 Subscript	ion(s) with a due date of 03/31/2016. Click Fin	ish to continue.
CANCEL	🗘 BACK 🗘 NEXT	SINISH

- 8. Read the message that the subscription with a due date of xx.
- 9. Click Finish to continue.
 - Aptify automatically created an **order quotation** for the subscription renewal.
- 10. Click on the Home dashboard.
- 11. Look at the Today's Orders view.
- 12. Locate the most recent order whose Ship To Name is your Person
- 13. Double-click to open the quotation order.
- 14. Change the Order Type from Quotation to Regular.
- 15. Change the Order Status to Shipped.
- 16. In the Summary area, enter the payment information (use Pre-Paid Check or credit card).
 - Note that the Payment Type defaults to Purchase Order for quotations created by the renewal wizard.
- 17. Click Save.
- 18. Open your persons record. Click the Subscriptions tab.
 - Notice that the End Date is now two years from the Start Date. If a user opens the Subscriptions record, the number of **Issues Purchased** has increased to 24.

Auto-Renewing Memberships/Subscriptions

Auto-Renewing subscriptions automatically generate standing orders that can regularly be converted to regular orders. Once the regular order is shipped, the subscription is renewed. Aptify strongly encourages all organizations to use auto-renewal, so that customers never forget to renew their membership.

- 1. Type 06, and open Emily Robinson's Persons record from .Quick Search.
- 2. Select Create Order from the Actions Menu.
- 3. Order the XYZ Membership product.
- 4. Enter Payment information.
- 5. Save the record (BUT DO NOT SHIP).
- 6. Open the Order Lines record.
- 7. From the Extended tab drop-down, select the Subscriptions tab.
- 8. Click to check the Auto Renew checkbox.

Order Lines record			8
Subscription -			
In Memory Of		Q 🗄	
In Honor Of		Q 🗄	
Recipient	Robinson, Emily/VC Osaka Technologies Group, Inc.	् 🔳	
Recipient Company]	
Purchase Type Subscription Start Date Agent Order Number	Individual Subscription Copies 01/19/2016	1	
		OK CANCE	EL

- 9. Click the **OK** button.
- 10. From the Orders record, change the Order Status from Taken to Shipped.
- 11. Click Save and Close.

Fulfilling the Auto-Renewal Standing Order

- 1. From Quick Search, open the Active Standing Orders view.
- 2. Select the Membership Dues standing order at the very top sorted by ID.
- 3. Click the More dropdown.
- 4. Select the Standing Order Fulfillment Wizard.



- 5. Click Next to continue.
- 6. Leave the Order dates as is; normally this would be changed to desired process date.
- 7. Click Next to continue.

Standing Order Fulfillment Wizard	8
0	2
Select Order Date	Finish
Welcome to Aptify Standing Order Fulfillmer filling all standing orders that have product o order should be fulfilled. Wizard will run for all the records in the view	nt Wizard. This wizard will walk you through the process of qualified for distribution or have frequencies where standing /.
Enter the order date for the new records	01/19/2016 🗸
CANCEL	NEXT

- 8. For Step 2, the wizard automatically inserts today's date as the Order Date. Click **Next** to continue without changing the Order Date.
- 9. To process the Standing Order, click Finish and then when prompted, click OK.
- 10. When notified that the Standing Order fulfillment completed successfully, click **OK**.
- 11. Within the **Standing Orders** view, double-click to open the standing order that was just fulfilled.
- 12. Select the **Purchases** tab.
- 13. There will be **no record** here until the date of shipment has been reached (i.e. the first day of the subscription), then deferred income will be actualized.

Cancelling a Membership/Subscription

Subscriptions - Full Cancellation

A membership or subscription can be cancelled similar to cancelling a physical product as covered in the **Order Entry** chapter.

- 1. From the Home dashboard, Today's Orders view, select the last Membership order.
- 2. From the More button drop-down, select the Order Cancellation Wizard.

Today'	s Order	S	
) 🖬 C 🎕	More - Auto-Resize Columns
	ID 10150	SHIPTOCOMPANY Danube Partners	Messaging Entity Bulk Operations Wizard
	10151	Danube Partners	New Order Wizard
	10152	XYZ Corporation	New Contact Log Wizard
	10153	Polyhedron Power Devices	Ship Partial Wizard
	10155	VC Osaka Technologies Group,	Order Cancellation Wizard Meeting Transfer Wizard
	10156	Ottoman	GL Batch Export

- 3. The Welcome screen displays Click Next.
- 4. The order defaults to the name of the employee **Taken by**. If a record had been selected, the **Order** field will auto-fill with the ID, otherwise enter the number.
- 5. From the Cancellation Reason drop-down list, select Incorrect Product.

Orde	er Cancellatio	n Wizard			8
		2			5
	Intro	Select Original Order	Select Order Lines	Select Refund or Cr	edit Complete Cancellation
-	Step 1: Sp Please spec	ec ify Order ify the order which you wo Taken By [Order]	uld like to cancel. Also, en End User 10153	sure that the value for e	mployee is correctly entered.
-		Cancellation Reason	Incorrect Product	~	/
	CANCEL	<	васк 🔿	NEXT	

- 6. Click Next.
- 7. Select the XYZ Subscription order line checkbox.
- 8. Leave the Cancel Quantity set to 1.

Intro		Select Origin	al Order	Sele	ect Order Lines		Select Refund or Credit	Complete Cancellatio
Step 2: Specific Spec	ify Order Lines y one of more of (details, double cl Check None	OrderLines to cance ick on the desired ro	. Also, indicate w.	the quantity wh	ich should be ca	ncelled. To		
SELECTED	LINE	PRODUCT	PRODUCT	DESCRIPT	EXTENDED	QUANTITY	CAI	ICEL QUANTITY
	1	2	Individual Membership	Individual Sub: Dacey Yukon. Start:	\$250.00	1	0	
∈ ⊲ 1								1 - 1 of 1 item
Return St	ipping Charge ancellation Fee F Product	Product	Sh	ow Cancellation	n Fee Products			

- 9. Click Next and follow the on-screen instructions to complete the cancellation process.
 - When prompted to select a balance type, select Keep on Account.
- 10. Click Next.
- 11. Check the Review The Created Cancellation Order.
 - If left unchecked, another user will have to process the order to Shipped for the Credit to Account to take place and for GL's to be corrected.
- 12. Change the Canellation Order Status to Shipped.
- 13. Click to Save and Close the Order record.
- 14. Open the Subscriptions service and run the All Active Subscriptions view.
- 15. Double-click the most recent entry to open the corresponding Subscriptions record.
 - Notice that the **Status** field is set to **Cancelled** and the Cancellation Order cancelled all 12 issues of the monthly subscription.

Subscriptions - Partial Cancellation

- 1. Follow the same steps as in the previous exercise to enter an order for the XYZ Subscription product.
- 2. From the Order in the Orders Over the Last 30 Days view.
- 3. Change the Status to Shipped.
 - A product must have a status of Shipped to be finalized.
- 4. In the View, click to activate the recent record.
- 5. From the view toolbar, the **More** button drop-down, click the **Order Cancellation Wizard** tab to launch the wizard.
- 6. Click Next.
- 7. The order defaults to the name of the employee **Taken by**. If a record had been selected, the **Order** field will auto-fill with the ID, otherwise enter the number.
- 8. Leave the Cancellation Reason blank
- 9. Click Next.
- 10. In the check box for the XYZ Subscription order line, place a check mark.
- 11. Set the Cancel Quantity to .5 (half)
 - This will cancel half of the subscription. Therefore, for a 12-month subscription, this will cancel 6 issues.
 - Note that a user can also enter a fraction (such as 6/12) in the Quantity field and Aptify will automatically convert the fraction to the decimal value.
- 12. To complete the cancellation process, click **Next** and follow the on-screen instructions.
 - When prompted to select a balance type, select Keep On Account.
- 13. Save and Close the order.
- 14. Open the view of the Subscriptions service.
- 15. Double-click the most recent entry to open the Subscriptions record.
 - Notice that the Subscription's Status is still Active but the End Date for the original subscription purchase is 6 months in the future rather than 1 year.
- 16. Double-click the entry.
- 17. Click the **Purchases** tab.
 - Notice that the number of **Issues Purchased** is half the total.

Membership Views

From the Quick Search, enter the text % Expiring in.

Several selections will display:

Members Expiring in 90 Days Members Expiring in the next 60 Days Quotations for Membership Expiring in 30 Days Ago Quotations for Membership Expiring in 60 Days Ago Quotations for Membership Expiring in 90 Days Ago

Quotations are generated as a result of running the Subscription Renewal Wizard. Users often schedule these views to run automatically and send a renewal notice via a process flow to members whose membership is coming due. These renewal notices are usually scheduled to go out periodically at 90, 60, 30, 14, 7, etc. days from the actual renewal date. As users pay for membership they drop off the view(s) by a filter of **Balance Due being greater than 0**.

Examples are included here for replication and use, but can be expanded upon for more in depth analysis. Users can add their own desired prompts, fields, sorting, etc. by copying and editing the Properties of any of these views.

- 1. Select the Members Expiring in 90 Days View
- 2. Observe the **Results**.
 - Only one Order displays due to limited records in the Training DB.

Members Expi	Members Expiring in 90 Days						
. Z	ii	C 🔹 More ▾					
	ID	FIRST NAME	LAST NAME	MEMBER TYPE			
	37	James	Hill	Student Member			

- 1. From the Quick Search, enter the text Find Persons.
- 2. Select the Find Persons Join Date/Membership View.
- 3. Enter **Student** in the Member Type prompt.
- 4. Observe the **Results**.

Find Join [I Persons - Date Between	Join Date/ 1/1/2013	Membershij ~	And 12/31/2013 V	Member Type: student
	. 2	•	C S	More 🕶	
	FIRST NAME	LAST NA	JOIN DATE	COMPANY	MEMBER TYPE
	Luke	Garcia	07/22/2013	PT Astra International Tbk.	Student Member
	Logan	Rodriquez	07/22/2013	La corne d'abondance	Student Member
	Luke	Zagreb	07/22/2013	Reggiani Caseifici	Student Member
	Emily	May	07/22/2013	Cottonwood Taping Systems	Student Member

Chapter 13



Campaigns

Objective	13.1
Setting up a Campaign	13.2
Creating a Campaign Segment	13.5
Creating a Campaign Segment	13.5
Adding Prospects to a Campaign	13.7
Campaign Views	13.11

Objective

In this chapter, you will have the opportunity to work with Campaigns. This includes:

- Creating Campaigns, manually or using the Campaign Setup Wizard
- Creating Campaign Segments to target your marketing efforts
- Adding Persons to a Prospect List
- Apply a Campaign to an Order

Campaigns Overview

Allows organizations to create different marketing campaigns

- Sales to move products
- Campaigns to increase product awareness

Within the service, organizations have the ability to:

- Discount products based on Membership type
- Discount Products and/or Product Categories
- Tie a Prospect List to a campaign
- Track Prospect status
- · Whether they have accepted or declined the marketing offer
- Track Documents and Tasks related to a Campaign effort

At the time of order, the order entry person can specify a campaign for the entire order **or** apply the campaign to a specific order line

Setting up a Campaign

The Campaign Management application enables users to incorporate products specifically tied to a marketing campaign in order to offer discounted prices. Campaigns can be used for marketing membership, meetings, etc. Once a campaign is tied to an order, all products linked to the campaign will display the appropriate discount.

- 1. Select the Campaign Management application.
- 2. Click on the New Campaign button.

	Applications	★ Favorites		NEW CAMPAIGN NEW ORDER WIZARD
x	Home			
4	Spaces			All In Progress Campaigns
	Accounting		-	📙 🗹 🛗 👖 C 🎄 More 🕶
8	Awards		-	D ID NAME
Q	Campaign Man	agement	^	3 General Marketing Campaign

- 3. In the Name field, enter XYZ Campaign.
- 4. In the Description field, enter Introduce XYZ Product.
- 5. Enter an End Date of one month from today.
 - Today's date automatically populates in the **Start Date** field.
- 6. Enter Marketing in the Type field.
- 7. Enter the Status as In-Progress.
- 8. In the Coordinator field, enter an Employee number or name.
- 9. Check the Invitation Required checkbox.
 - When checked, only persons and companies in the Campaign's prospect list with a status of **Invited** will be able to respond to the campaign.

Ð		H,	Î	Ð	G	▲	More	•
	Name	XYZ Camp	aign					
	Parent							Q 🚹
Des	cription	Introduce	the XYZ	Product.				
Sta	art Date	01/13/201	6	~	Enc	d Date		~
	Туре	Marketing						۹ 🔳
	Status	In-Progres	<u>s</u>					۹ 🔳
Coo	rdinator	End User						۹ 🔳
I	Meeting				Q	Ŧ	🗸 Invitati	on Required

- 10. Click the **Discounts > Products** section.
- 11. Click the New button.
- 12. In the **Product** field, enter the name of your *XYZ* **Product** (*XYZ* = your initials).
- 13. From the Discount Type drop-down, select Discount %.
- 14. In the **Discount %** field, enter **20%**.
- 15. In the Member Type field, enter Member.
 - Members will receive a 20% discount on this product

Products record			8
Broduct	VV7 Desident		-
Floduct	XYZ Product		
Туре	Discount %		\sim
Currency Type			
Discount Amount	\$0.00		
Discount %	20		
Amount	\$0.00		
Member Type	Member	Q	Û
	Include Sub-Member Types		
	OK AND NEW OK	CANCE	EL]

- 16. Click the **OK AND NEW** button.
- 17. In the Product field, enter XYZ Product.
- 18. From the Discount Type drop-down, select Discount %.
- 19. In the **Discount %** field, enter **10%**.
- 20. In the Member Type field, enter Non-Member.
- 21. Click the **Ok** button.
- 22. Save the Campaign record.

Name	XYZ Campaign						
Parent			Q	+			
Description	Introduce the XYZ Produ	ct.					
Start Date	01/13/2016	End Date		\sim			
Туре	Marketing		Q	Î			
Status	In-Progress		Q	Û			
Coordinator	End User		Q	Î			
Meeting		Q 🗄	🚺 Invitation Re	quire	d		
Discounts >	Products -						
NEW EDIT	DELETE 🚹	*					
	PRODUCT	TYPE	DISCOUNT AMOU	DI	SCOUNT %	AMOUNT	MEMBER TYPE
	XYZ Product	Discount %	0.00	20)	0.00	Member
	XYZ Product	Discount %	0.00) 10)	0.00	Non-Member

Creating a Campaign Segment

An organization can use Campaign Segments to identify the target audiences for a marketing effort targeting multiple groups. In this exercise, you will create a Campaign Segment for the *XYZ* Product Launch Campaign targeting the persons in a view.

- 1. From the XYZ Campaign record, click the Segments section.
- 2. Click the New button.
- 3. In the Campaign field, XYZ Campaign defaults.
- 4. In the Name field Persons with Profile Photos.
- 5. From the Filter Type drop-down menu, select View.
- 6. In the View field, enter the view name, Persons with Profile Photos
- 7. In the **Rank** field, enter **1**.



- 8. Save + Close the record.
- 9. Return to the Campaign Dashboard
- 10. Click on the More button from the All In Progress Campaigns view.
- 11. Select Campaign List Builder.



- 12. Click the Next button.
- 13. Enter XYZ Campaign in the Campaign field.
- 14. Keep Initialize List and Preserve Manual Entries checked.
- 15. Keep the **Default Status** as **Invited**.

Campaign List B	Campaign List Builder					
	0	2				
	Welcome	Select Campaign				
Step 1: Select the c	ampaign and options below and hit "Nex	t" to build the list.				
Campaign	XYZ Campaign	Q 🗰				
	🗸 Initialize List					
	V Preserve Manual List Entries					
Default Status	Invited 🗸					
CANCEL	🗘 васк	NEXT	FINISH			

- 16. Click the **Finish** button.
- 17. From Quick Search find and run the Prospects per Campaign (BASE VIEW).
- 18. In the Campaign prompt enter XYZ Campaign.
- 19. Click GO.
- 20. Observe the entries added from the Campaign List Builder.

Prospects per Campaign (BASE VIEW) Campaign: xyz campaign Campaign: xyz campaign Campaign: Campaign	n Status: <in progress=""></in>		
📙 🗹 🛗 🗊 C 🎕 More -			
PERSON	PERSON STATUS		
Jackson, Wainwright/Let's Stop N Shop	Invited		
May, Emily/Cottonwood Taping Systems	Invited		
Jones, Brian/Let's Stop N Shop Invited			
Lowe, Mason/Let's Stop N Shop	Invited		

Adding Prospects to a Campaign

Prospects can also be added to Campaigns by the Prospect List section or directly from a View without using Segments.

Adding Prospects from a Campaign

- 1. Open the XYZ Campaign record (if not already open).
- 2. Select the **Prospect List** section.
- 3. Click the New Record button to open a new Campaign List Detail record.
- 4. From the Type drop-down menu, select Person.
- 5. In the Person field, enter Aisesha Baldwin record (ID 01).
- 6. The Prospect Status field should default to Invited.
 - After a Person has responded to the marketing offer a user could use an Entity Bulk Operation from a View of Prospects to update the Prospect Status.

💦 Campaign List Detail ID: 3139 🛛 🗙						
	ii	Ð	G		More 🕶	
General 👻						
Campaign	XYZ Campa	ign				
Туре	Person					
Person	Baldwin, Aie	sha/Danube	Partners			
Company						
Campaign Segment	Campaign Segment					
	Generate	ed				
Prospect Status	Invited					

- 7. Click the Save and New button
- 8. This Opens a 2nd Campaign List Detail record from the Campaign's Prospect List tab.
- 9. From the Type drop-down menu in the second row, select Company.
- 10. In the Company field, enter record 01 and select for Danube Partners.
 - Any **Persons** associated with **Danube Partners** can now respond to the Invitation Only campaign.
- 11. Ensure that the **Prospect Status** field is **Invited**.
- 12. Click Save.

Adding Prospects from a view

- 1. From the Quick Search, find and open your San Francisco Student Members view.
- 2. Check the upper left-most check box (Select All box).
- 3. Click the More drop-down button.
- 4. Select Add Persons to Campaign.

San Francis	San Francisco Student Members						
		C 🕸	More 🔻				
ID	FIRST NAME	LAST NAME	Record History				
V 90	Quillan	Byrd	Export to Excel				
			Reports				
V 48	Wainwright	Jackson	Add To List				
V 2100	Brian	Jones	Add To Favorites				
V 1758	Mason	Lowe	Add View To Favorites				
			Auto-Resize Columns				
2484	Emily	May	Messaging				
1339	Andrew	Walker	Entity Bulk Operations Wizard				
			Add Persons To Committee Wizard				
		<	Add Persons To Campaign				

- 5. In the Campaign field, enter the XYZ Campaign.
- 6. Click the Next button.
 - A message will indicate how many records will be added to the campaign

Add Persons To Campaign	8							
0	2							
Select Campaign	Confirm Action							
Select the Campaign for adding the current selected items. If no item selected, the entire contents of this view will be added. Campaign XYZ Campaign								

- 7. From the second screen, click the **Finish** button.
- 8. From Quick Search find and run the Prospects per Campaign (BASE VIEW).
- 9. In the Campaign prompt enter XYZ Campaign.
- 10. Click GO.
- 11. Observe the entries added from the Add to Persons to Campaign wizard.

Applying Campaigns to Orders

Applying a Campaign to an Entire Order

In this exercise, users will learn how to apply a campaign to an entire order and to each individual item in an order.

- 1. Find and Open Aiesha Baldwin's record.
- 2. From the Landing page click Actions Create Order button.
 - Note: Campaign pricing can only be used for a designated prospect since the XYZ Campaign's **Invitation Only** box was checked.
- 3. In the Campaign field, enter XYZ Campaign.
 - When applying a single campaign to an entire order, the Campaign **MUST** be entered first, before adding products to the order.
- 4. Enter XYZ Product to the Order Line, click Add.

Customer - Order Date Ship To Ship To Company Bill To Company Campaign	01/19/2016 V Order Party: Baldwin, Aleshar/Danube Partners Danube Partners Baldwin, Aleshar/Danube Partners Danube Partners Danube Partners Danube Partners Customer Type: Corporate Member/Member XYZ Campaign	Company Q ii Q ii Q ii Q ii		Order Addresse Line 1 Line 2 Line 3 City, State ZIP County County	ss Ship To Address V • 910 Southwest Union Avenue Palo Alto Santa Clara United States Ship To Phone V	CA V 94301 V Bad Addres	5		
Order Source	U.S. Mail Walk-In	× ×			1 650 750-9187 x				
Order Lines									
Find Product	Quantity 1 Qty Avail:	ADD	CLEAR SE	EARCH					
👸 XYZ Produ	ict (ID: 9922)	D	escription			Quantity 1	Price \$100.00	Discount 20.00 %	Extended \$80.00

- 5. Observe the **Discount** percentage applied.
- 6. On the Payment tab, enter payment information.
- 7. Finish and Ship the Order.
- 8. From Quick Search find and run the Orders per Campaign view.
 - A Base View is used so that Campaigns, Orders, and Order Lines information will display. This is important for capturing both Campaigns applied at the Order Level AND the Order Line level which will be done in the next exercise.
- 9. Observe the results there should be one order for Aiesha Baldwin listed.

Applying a Campaign to an Order Line

- 1. Create another order from Luke Tate's Persons record (ID 343).
- 2. Luke Tate meets BOTH criteria for receiving the discount:
 - He is on the invited Prospect List via having Danube Partners as a company.
 - He has Non-Member status and will receive a 10% discount.
- 3. Enter the XYZ Product in Find Product.
- 4. Leave the Quantity as 1, click Add.
- 5. On the right side of the Order Line, click **Open**.

Order Lines					*
Find Product Quantity 1 Qty Avail:	ADD CLEAR SEARCH				DELETE ALL
& XYZ Product (ID: 9922) Description	Quantity 1	Price \$100.00	Discount 0.00 %	Extended \$100.00	/ 🛛 😆

6. Enter XYZ Campaign in the Campaign Code field.

Order Lines record		8
Extended -		
Quantity Inventory Location	1 Price \$100.00 Discount 20 XYZ Organization/XYZ Warehouse Not Returned To Stock	
Campaign Code	XYZ Campaign	Q 🗄
Chapter	Allow Description Override Discount Over	Rridden
Description		
		OK CANCEL

- 7. Click OK.
- 8. Click **OK** to return to the order.
- 9. Enter Payment information.
- 10. Ship and Close the order.
- 11. From Quick Search find and run the Orders per Campaign (BASE VIEW) view.
- 12. Observe the results there should be two orders listed.

Campaign Views

- 1. From the Quick Search, enter and find the Orders per Campaign (BASE VIEW).
- 2. Enter the XYZ Campaign you just created in the Campaign Name prompt.
- 3. Observe the **Results**.
 - Base View results show fields from Persons, Orders, and Campaign services.

Orders per Campaign Campaign: xyz cam	GO CAN	CEL						
	C 🔯 More -	r						
CAMPAIGN CODE NAME	ID ORDER DATE	TOTAL	SHIPTOCOMPANY	SHIPTONAME	SHIP TO ADDR LINE 1			
✓ Campaign Code Name: XYZ Campaign								
XYZ Campaign	10132 01/13/2016	\$80.00	Danube Partners	Aiesha Baldwin	910 Southwest Union Avenue			
	COUNT: 1	SUM: 80.00						

- 1. From the Quick Search, enter and find the Prospects per Campaign (BASE VIEW).
- 2. Enter the XYZ Campaign you just created in the Campaign prompt.
- 3. Observe the **Results**.
 - Base View results show fields from Persons, Orders, and Campaign services.

Prospects per Campaign (BASE VIEW)									
Campaign:	xyz		Carr	npaign Type:	<type></type>	Campaign Stat	us: <in progress=""></in>	 Person: 	<person></person>
Campaign Segment:	<segment> Person Status:</segment>		<status></status>	GO CA	NCEL				
. Z	8	C :	Q:	More 🔻					
PERSON -						PERSON STA	CAMPAIGN START D	CAMPAIGN END DATE	CAMPAIGN STA
Wade, Alexandra/U. Hardwick Physics AB						Invited	08/05/2014		In-Progress
Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners						Invited	08/05/2014		In-Progress
Chapter



Meetings

14.1
14.2
14.10
14.12
14.13
14.15
14.17
14.19

Objective

The Meetings function enables users to track meetings, meeting sessions and meeting registrants. After completing this lab, you will be able to:

- Copy an existing Meeting using the New Meeting Wizard
- Understand the parts of the Meeting record
- Order a meeting and register additional attendees on an order
- View all meeting Registrants
- Close a meeting and track Attendees

Overview

"Extended" product type

- Supports Meeting-specific features in addition to the General Product features
- Same setup and configuration as a standard Product
- Meetings use a Products record that includes an additional Meeting tab

Tracks meeting registrants, attendees, and additional information about the meeting

- Uses Aptify Inventory system to manage meetings with limited space
- Nearby hotels for attendees
- Meeting Location
- Required resources (such as audio/visual equipment)
- Sessions

Using the New Meeting Wizard

The New Meeting Wizard enables users to create a new meeting by copying elements of an existing meeting. This can save valuable time as Meeting coordinators often have similar meetings scheduled throughout the year. During the copy process, users can copy and then adjust details such as dates, time, speakers, location, etc.

This exercise will use the **New Meeting Wizard** to copy an existing XYZ Meeting and make modifications to make it unique.

- 1. Click the Meeting Management dashboard.
- 2. Click the New Meeting Wizard button.

NEW ME	ETING WIZ	ARD	ORDE	R WIZAR	D	
		_				
Future	e Meet	ings				
	\mathbb{Z}		Ī	G	Q	More 🕶
		ID	м	EETING	TITLE	
^		61	X	/Z Meeti	ng	
^		62	X	(Z Sessio	on I	

- 3. The first screen of the Meeting Wizard will display.
- 4. In the Copy **Existing Meeting** field, enter **XYZ Meeting** (exactly; do not substitute xyz for your initials).

New Meeting Wizard					8
0—					6
Intro	New Meeting Basic Info	New Meeting Web and Pricing Info	Cloned Meeting Basic Info	Cloned Meeting Session and Other Details	Confirm and Finish
Welcome to the New Mee	ting Wizard!				
This wizard walks you thre	ough the process of adding a	a new meeting to Aptify.			
If you want to use a copy Existing Meeting link box	of an existing meeting as you and click Next. Otherwise, to	ur starting point, select a rec start with a blank meeting, j	ord using the Copy just click Next.		
Copy Existing Meeting	XYZ Meeting		۹ 🖬		
			A		
CANCEL		G BACK	NEXT		

5. Click the Next button.

- 6. The second screen of the New Meeting Wizard displays.
 - On this screen users can edit the basic information concerning the meeting such as the name, date, coordinator, etc.
- 7. Edit the New <u>Product</u> Name field by overwriting XYZ with your initials plus the word Meeting (i.e. DOC Meeting).
- 8. Do not Click to the **Web Enabled** checkbox. This enables the users of ebusiness to see and order the meeting it should be the last task done in setting up a meeting.
- 9. Keep 3 the Max Registrants field.
 - If limited number of registratons is allowed enter that number here.
 - If registrations are unlimited, zero remains in this field..
- 10. Change the **Start Date and Time** to next week on Monday.
 - The year should automatically have defaulted to the current year.
 - IGNORE the dates in the screenshot; these are just placeholders
- 11. Change the End Date and Time to next week on Friday.
- 12. Click the **Next** button.

New Meeting Wiza	ırd	-4	5	8
Intro N	ew Meeting Basic New Meeting W Info and Pricing Info	eb Cloned Meeting b Basic Info	Cloned Meeting Session and Other Details	Confirm and Finish
New Product Name	• XYZ Meeting			
	Other Names Same As Product N	Name		
New Meeting Name	XYZ Meeting			
Category	Meetings			Q 🗑
Parent Meeting				Q 🖬
Meeting Type				Q 🚼
Web Name	XYZ Meeting			
	WebEnabled			
Meeting Conflict Type	No Conflict Validation	Max Registrants 3		
Meeting Dates				
Start Date and Time	12/07/2016 🗸	End Date and Time	12/11/2016	\sim
Registration Opens	01/01/1900 🗸	Registration Closes	01/01/1900	\sim
Rev. Rec. Date	• 01/01/1900 🗸			
Coordinator	John Samuels			۹ 💼
Organization	1			् 🕂
Committee	•			Q 🗄
Linked Expo				् 🗄
Description	1			
CANCEL	G BACK	NEXT		

- 13. The third screen of the New Meeting Wizard displays.
 - This screen enables users to decide whether to copy the originating Meeting's Logistics such as Location, Sessions, Sponsors, Education Units, etc.
- 14. Leave the information intact.

New Meeting Wi	zard				8
		O		-5	
Intro	New Meeting E Info	Basic New Meeting Web and Pricing Info	Cloned Meeting Basic Info S	Cloned Meeting Session and Othe Details	Confirm and Finish r
The wizard will copy checked below. For copied to the new m	the specified info example, if you le eeting.	ormation from the existing m ave Topic Codes checked, th	neeting to the new meet ne Topic Codes selected	ting for each item t d on the original m	hat is eeting will be
V Speakers	V Hotels	🗸 Education Unit	s 🔽 Pricing/F	Prerequisites 🗸	Attributes
Resources	V Sponsor	s 🛛 🗸 Topics Codes	🗸 Accounti	ng	
session to the new s	SELECTED	the options you checked abo	SESSION START DA	TE SESSION	END DATE
XYZ Session I	1	XYZ Session I	12/07/2016 12:00:0	0 PM 12/07/20	016 01:00:00 PM
XYZ Session II		XYZ Session II	12/08/2016 02:00:0	0 PM 12/08/20	016 03:00:00 PM
		С васк			

15. In the sessions Meeting Title column, double-click the XYZ Session I meeting title.

16. Observe that the basic information could be edited for the Session at this time.

• Dates have automatically adjusted based on date choices for screen #2.

Meeting Cloning Wizard Sessions record							
Meeting Title	XYZ Session I						
Session Start Date	12/07/2016 12:00:00 PM		~				
Session End Date	12/07/2016 01:00:00 PM		~				
Meeting ID	XYZ Session I		Q 🔳				
		OK AND NEW OK	CANCEL				

- 17. Click **OK**.
- 18. Click the Next button.

- 19. A message displays that the wizard is ready to create the new meeting.
- 20. Select the checkbox to Open the New Meeting record after it has been created.
- 21. Click Finish.

New Meeting	Wizard			8
_	O		~~~	6
Intro	New Meeting Basic New Meeting Info and Pricing	g Web Cloned I Info Basic	Meeting Cloned Mee clnfo Session and Details	ting Confirm and Finish Other
The wizard is no	w ready to create the new meeting. Click w Meeting after it has been created.	Finish to continue		
CANCEL	🗘 ВА	ск 🗘	NEXT	

- 22. The finished **Meeting** Product record should now display if it does not, open it from the **Future Meetings** view of the **Meeting Management** dashboard.
- 23. Observe the changes to the Name and Date(s) that were made in the wizard.

🧿 хүz м	eeting (ID: 9959) 🗙	
8	🛗 🕙 C 🛕 More 🕶	
Nam	XYZ Meeting	
Catego	y Meetings	् 📋
Тур	Meeting	~
Parent Produ	rt	Q 🗄
Meeting -		
General 🗸		
Meeting Title	XYZ Meeting	
Start Date	12/07/2016 V End Date 12/11/2016	\sim
Status	Planned 🗸 CLOSE	
Meeting Type		Q 🖪
Coordinator	John Samuels	Q 📋
Linked Expo		Q 🗄
Meeting Conflict	No Conflict Validation	\sim
Max Reg.	3 Avail. Space 0	
Description		

- 24. From the General drop-down, click the Meeting Logistics>Location section.
 - The Meeting Logistics section stores information specifically to this Meeting.
- 25. Observe the Location tab information.
 - This section displays information about the meeting location and can include room information.
 - Venue/Room records can be created/saved for easy loading of details.

Meeting 🗸		
Meeting Log	gistics > Location 🗸	
Venue Room Room Type Place Line 1 Line 2	XYZ Convention Center Test room Lecture Hall Test room / Test Venue 11 Relaxation Drive	Q 1
Line 3	Newther El 22050	
County	Monroe Bad Address	
Country	United States Dad Address Phone Image: Comparison of the state	
Directions	From Airport: L on Main St follow 4 miles R on Sessions Ave follow 400 yards R on Relaxation Drive - 11 Relaxation	

- 26. Click the **Meetings** > **Sessions** > **List** tab.
- 27. The two sessions that carried over from the Wizard are available.
- 28. Double-click the **XYZ Session I** record and change the **Product Name** and **Meeting Name** to your initials.
- 29. Save and Close the record.
- 30. Double-click the **XYZ Session II** record and change the **Product Name** and **Meeting Name** to your initials.
- 31. Save and Close the record.

Meeting] 🖛		
Meeting	g Logistics > Sess	ions > List 👻	
Meeting	IS		
		C 🕸 More 🕶	
D ID	MEETING TITLE	START DATE	END DATE
62	XYZ Session I	12/07/2016 12:00:00 PM	12/07/2016 01:00:00 PM
63	XYZ Session II	12/08/2016 02:00:00 PM	12/08/2016 03:00:00 PM

- 32. Click the Speakers tab
- 33. The Speaker that was designated on the original record displays.

Meeting Logistics > Speakers 👻							
NEW EDIT	DELETE	1 🛃 🛓					
	SPEAKER	STATUS	TYPE	TITLE			
	Yukon, Dacey/Polyhe Power Devices	Accepted	Regular	Speaker			

- 34. Double click the Speakers record.
- 35. Change the Start Date to next Monday at 9:00 AM.
- 36. Change the End Date to next Monday at 11:00 AM.
- 37. Click the **OK** button.

Speakers record		8
General 🗸		
Speaker	Yukon, Dacey/Polyhedron Power Devices	् 🔳
Status	Accepted	~
Туре	Regular	~
Title	Speaker	
Description		
Start Date	12/07/2016 09:00:00 AM	
End Date	12/07/2016 11:00:00 AM	
Evaluation	August 2010 11:00:00 AM	
Evaluation	Average	
Content Quality	Average	
Speaker Quality	Average	~
Cost	\$0.00	
Date Rejection Sent		~
	Reimburse Speaker	
Max Expenses	\$0.00	
	OK AND NEW OK C	ANCEL

38. Click the **Sponsors** tab.

39. Sponsors can be added, edited, and deleted as needed.

Meeting Logistics > Sponsors	•		
NEW EDIT DELETE 🛧 🛧	↓ <u>↓</u>		
	SPONSOR	CONTACT	AMOUNT
	Ottoman	Lambert, Baka/Ottoman	1000

- 40. Click the **Hotels** tab
- 41. Hotels and locations, offers and directions can be added, edited, and deleted as needed.

Meeting Logistics > Hotels 🕶			
NEW EDIT DELETE 🛧 🛧 🕹 보			
HOTEL	SPECIAL OFFERING	OFFER STA	OFFER END
Marriot - Marathon Key	20 % off total stay	12/07/2016	12/07/2016

- 42. Click the **Resources** tab.
- 43. Resources and types, quantity, start/end dates can be added, edited, & deleted as needed.

Meeting Logi	stics > Resources	•				
NEW EDIT C	DELETE 7 1	, ±				
	RESOURCE	CHECKED	DOUBLE CHECKED	QUANTITY	START DA	END DATE
	Podium			1	12/07/2016	12/11/2016
	White Board			1	12/07/2016	12/11/2016

44. Click the Education Units tab.

45. Education Categories can be set up to track how many Continuing Education Units an attendee will receive for attending a particular meeting.



- 46. Double click the Continuing Education Units line.
- 47. The Meeting Education Units Record displays.
- 48. These records can be added and edited to fit the class requirements. Units can also be tied to a specific Education module curriculum and administer credit towards the fulfillment of a curriculum if so designated.

Meeting Education U	inits record		8
CE Type	Education Unit		~
		~	-
Education Category	Continuing Education Units	Q	
Primary Function		Q	8
Education Units	2		
Certifications			
If tracking CE units Type and enter the o these units will appl	as Certifications in Aptify Education Management, se corresponding Requirement (Course) or Curriculum to y.	lect t whic	he ch
Certification Type	Requirement		~
Requirement		Q	8
Curriculum		Q	Ð
Title			
	OK AND NEW OK	C/	ANCEL

- 49. Once a student is marked as **Attended** (But not just as Registered) for this meeting he or she will automatically receive the designated number of credits.
- 50. On the Meeting Education Units record, Click OK.
- 51. Save and Close the Meeting record.

Creating Meeting Registrations

Registering for a meeting is the same as ordering any other product. In this exercise three separate individuals for the XYZ Meeting will be registered by creating three separate order lines for the XYZ Meeting product.

- 1. Open your Persons record.
- 2. From Actions, click on Create Order.
- 3. Add your *XYZ* Meeting to the Order Line.
- 4. A pop up window will display with Registration and Session information.
- 5. Select the box next to both XYZ Session I AND XYZ Session II.
- 6. Click the **OK** button.

Select Sessio	ns for Meeting	
SELECT ALL	UNSELECT ALL	OK CANCEL
Proce	XYZ Session II (9917) Start Date: 12/08/2025 02:00:00 PM End Date: 12/08/2025 03:00:00 PM	
Proce	XYZ Session I (9918) Start Date: 12/07/2025 12:00:00 PM End Date: 12/07/2025 01:00:00 PM Place: Room A / XYZ Hotel	

- 7. Open the Order Line the XYZ Meeting.
- 8. Change the **Registrant** to ID 02 Alexandra Wade.
- 9. Click **OK** to close the Order Line.
- 10. Repeat steps 7-8 for both XYZ Session I and XYZ Session II.

Order Lines						
Find Product Qua	ntity 1 Qty Avail: AD	D CLEAR SE	EARCH			DELETE ALL
TXYZ Meeting (ID: 9916)	Attendee: Wade, Alexandra/U. Hardwick Physics AB	Quantity 1	Price \$100.00	Discount 0.00 %	Extended \$100.00	/ 🛛 😣
TXYZ Session II (ID: 9917)	Attendee: Wade, Alexandra/U. Hardwick Physics AB	Quantity 1	Price \$50.00	Discount 0.00 %	Extended \$50.00	/ 🛛 😣
TXYZ Session I (ID: 9918)	Attendee: Wade, Alexandra/U. Hardwick	Quantity 1	Price \$125.00	Discount 0.00 %	Extended \$125.00	/ 🗹 😆

- 11. Add the **XYZ Meeting** to Order Lines again.
- 12. This time, do **NOT** order any of the sessions just close the popup.
- 13. Open the new Order line for the XYZ Meeting.
- 14. Change the **Registrant** to ID 03 Athena Scott.
- 15. Click **OK** to close the Order Line.

- 16. Add the XYZ Meeting to Order Lines for a third time.
- 17. Again, do NOT order any of the sessions just close the popup.
- 18. Do NOT Open the new **Order line** for the **XYZ Meeting -** this registration will remain for Aiesha Baldwin.
- 19. Enter Payment information.
- 20. Save the Order.
- 21. Change the Status to Shipped.
- 22. Save and Close the Order.

Note: When taking an order for multiple registrants AND when the originating person is seeking to be registered as well, that person MUST be registered last, or the system will overwrite the first registration line(s).

- 23. From Quick Search, find and open the Find Meeting Registrant (BASE VIEW).
- 24. Enter XYZ Meeting in the Meeting Name prompt.
- 25. Click GO.
- 26. Observe the Registrants for your XYZ Meeting.

Placing a Person on the Waiting List

Normally a meeting would have many slots available. This example meeting had a maximum of three registrants in order to see the result of someone registering for a meeting that has exceeded its maximum number.

- 1. Open new order for Baka Lambert's (ID 04) use Quick Search to find.
- 2. Put the XYZ Meeting in Find Product but don't ADD before observing the Qty Avail:.
- 3. It should be 0.

Order Lines		
XYZ Meeting	Quantity 1 Qty Avail: 0	ADD CLEAR SEARCH

- 4. Click ADD.
- 5. Enter **Payment** information.
- 6. Click Save.
- 7. Close the record Baka Lambert was automatically added to the Wait List.
- 8. From Quick Search, find and open the Find Meeting Registrant (BASE VIEW).
- 9. Enter XYZ Meeting in the Meeting Name prompt.
- 10. Click **GO**.
- 11. Observe that Baka Lambert is listed with a status of Waiting for the XYZ Meeting.

Note: If the user tries to change the Order Status to **Shipped** and **Save and Close** the Order, they would receive the following message:



IF this message is received, the user should close out of the order and select **Discard** when the "Do you wish to Save" pop-up comes up. Even though Discard is chosen, the order will be saved in the **Taken** status AND the user will be placed on the **Wait List**.

Cancelling a Registration

The **Order Cancellation wizard** can be used to cancel orders that have one or more meeting registrations. In this exercise, users will employ the wizard to cancel a person ordered on Aiesha Baldiwin's order taken previously.

- 1. Click on the Home Dashboard.
- 2. From the Today's Orders view, select the XYZ Meeting order by Aiesha Baldwin.
- 3. Click the More dropdown.
- 4. Select the Order Cancellation Wizard.
- 5. Enter the Cancellation Reason.
- 6. Click Next.
- 7. The Cancellation wizard displays all order lines.
- 8. Scroll down to the order line for Athena Scott (should be line 4).
- 9. Click on the left-hand checkbox.
- 10. Click Next to continue.

Order	Cancellation V	Vizard								8
e	_					3				-6
	Intro		Select Origina	al Order	Sele	ct Order Lines		Select Refund or Credit	: Compl	ete Cancellation
-	Step 2: Specify Please specify see order line d Check All	one of more of O letails, double clic Check None	rderLines to cancel ck on the desired ro	. Also, indicate w.	the quantity whi	ch should be ca	ncelled. To			
	SELECTED	LINE	PRODUCT	PRODUCT	DESCRIPT	EXTENDED	QUANTITY		CANCEL QUANTITY	
*					Desistration					
		4	9916	XYZ Meeting	for Athena Scott	\$100.00	1		1	
										1 - 5 of 5 items
	Return Ship	pping Charge ncellation Fee Pr	oduct	St	now Cancellation	Fee Products				
		Product			\sim					
2		Fee \$0.00								
8	CANCEL				🗘 вас	к 🗘	NEXT			

- 11. Select Keep On Account.
- 12. Click Next.
- 13. Check the Review The Created Cancellation Order box.
- 14. Click Finish to generate the cancellation order.
- 15. Change the Order Status to Shipped.
 - Order must be shipped finalize the transaction.
 - Will make registration spot available for meeting.
- 16. Save and Close the cancellation order.

Moving a Person from Wait List to Registered

This process is not automated in Aptify.

- 1. From Today's Orders view, open the Order for Baka Lambert of XYZ Meeting.
- 2. Open the order line for the *XYZ* Meeting.
- 3. Change the Status from Waiting to Registered.

Order Lines record				8
Meeting -				
General 🗸				
Meeting Name	XYZ Meeting			
Attendee	Lambert, Baka/Ottoma	an		् 📋
Badge Name	Baka Lambert			
Badge Company Name	Ottoman			
Badge Title	President			
Registration Type	Pre-Registration 🗸	V Show Name	On List	
Status	Registered 🗸	Cancellation Date	~	
	Registered	Exhibitor Booth	~	
	Waiting			
	Attended			
	Cancelled			
	No Show			
	Void From			
	Cancellation		ОК	CANCEL

- 4. Click OK.
- 5. In the Payments and Summary area, change the Order Status from Taken to Shipped.
- 6. Click Yes when asked if all items have been shipped.
- 7. Save and Close the record.
- 8. From Quick Search, find and open the Find Meeting Registrant (BASE VIEW).
- 9. Enter XYZ Meeting in the Meeting Name prompt.
- 10. Click GO.
- 11. Observe that **Baka Lambert** is listed with a status of **Registered** and **Athena Scott** is listed with a status of **Cancelled** for the **XYZ Meeting**.

Transferring a Meeting Registration

The meeting transfer wizard is able to perform two functions for an exiting meeting registration. It can substitute a different person for the same meeting, or it can transfer a person's existing meeting registration to a different meeting.

- The wizard is available for orders in either a Taken or Shipped status
- For Shipped Orders, the process creates a cancellation order and then a new transfer order
- 1. Create an Order for the Golf Tournament (ID 9927) for Hannah Taylor (ID 09).
- 2. Save and Ship the Order.
- 3. Click on the Meeting Management dashboard.
- 4. From the Future Meetings view, click the More button.
- 5. Select the Meeting Transfer Wizard.
- 6. Enter Hannah Taylor's name in the Persons field.
- 7. Enter the Golf Tournament (ID 9927) in the Meeting field.

Note: If you remember the **Order ID**, you can put that in the Order field without filling out the Person or Meeting fields.

Meeting	Transfer Wiz	ard				⊗
	1					5
ldent Registratio	ify the on to Modify	Transfer Details	Review Transf Details	er F	Payment Reconciliation	Transfer Completed
This wizard meeting, or	d performs two r it can transfer	functions for an existing a registration to a differe	meeting registratio nt meeting.	n. It can subs	stitute a different	person for the same
Step 1: Ide	entify the Regist	tration to Modify	to locate the order	that contain	the registration	to modify. Or if you already
know the I	D of the Order, e	nter that ID in the field p	rovided.	that contains	s the registration	to modify. Of, it you already
Person	Taylor, Hanna	h/Gemstone Solutions (Group	Q 🔳		
Meeting	Golf Tournam	<u>ent</u>		🔍 🔳		
Order]		
🚫 CA	NCEL	C	ВАСК	NEXT		

8. Click the Next button.

9. Select the Line 1 box.

C	Meeting Transfer Wizard				8
1.00	Ø—	2			6
	Identify the Registration to Modify	Transfer Details	Review Transfer Details	Payment Reconciliation	n Transfer Completed
	Order ID : 10160				
	Step 2: Specify Transfer Details	S			
	The meeting order lines for the (Order shown above appear below. W	/ithin the grid, specify the new me	eting and/or new attendee for	
	each registration that you want	co change and check the include bo	k, in not already checked. Then, cir	ok wext to continue.	
	INCLUDE	Find Persons record		Ӿ ve	VIOUS A NEW ATTEN
11.000	V	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partne	a	SELECT CANCEL	lor, inah/Ge itions up
8					
ľ				хт	

- 10. Click on the New Attendee column.
- 11. Click on the grey box that displays.
- 12. Enter Aiesha Baldwin (ID 01) in the Find Persons record popup.
- 13. Click Next.
- 14. Review the item selected users could go back to modify choices at this step.
- 15. Click Next.
- 16. Review the Advanced Settings/Payment Reconciliation screen.
 - Users could select a Transfer Fee to apply
 - Users could change the Payment Type or Keep on Account

entify the Re to Mod	gistration Transfer Details lify	Rev	view T	ransfer Details	Payment Reco	onciliation	Fransfer Complete
Order ID: 10	160						
Step 4: Advan	ced Setting and Payment Reconcilia	tion					
this step, you	u can modify advanced settings for	he order,	includ	ling Ship To /Bill T	o information, a	s applicable. Als	so, you can
pply a transfe ransfer the rec	r fee and specify details to either ge sistrations	nerate a	credit/	refund or cover a t	alance due. Wh	nen ready, click f	Next to
Shinoing/Bill	ling Info						
Shin To	Taylor Hannah/Gemetone Solutio		÷	Ship To Company	Gemetone Sc	olutions Group	•
Ship To	Taylor, Haman, Semistorie Solutio	~	m	sing to company	ocmatorie ac	Autoria Group	- W
Bill To	Taylor, Hannah/Gemstone Solutio	ns		Bill To Company	Gemstone So	olutions Group	
Taken By	End User	Q	Î		Usuppress	Commation E	mans
Transfer Fee	(Optional)			Original Orde		Transfer Orde	r
Product			~	Total	\$85.00	Total	\$85.00
Fee	\$0.00			Balance	\$0.00	Balance	\$0.00
-Balance-							
		Paym	ent Ty	pe Credit Memo		\sim	
Keep	On Account						
1 () = -	d l						

- 17. Click Next.
- 18. Click Finish.
- 19. Click Yes at next 2 Ship screens; user shipping both Transfer and Cancellation Orders.
- 20. Click No to Transfer another Person.

Closing a Meeting

After a meeting's completion, it is important to change the Status to Occurred and Closed for participants to receive education credits and accounting functions for the meeting to be actualized.

- 1. Open the **Meetings** record (if not already opened).
- 2. Select the Meetings tab and select the General sub-tab (if necessary).
- 3. Change the Status from Planned to Occurred.
- 4. Click the Close Meeting button.

Meeting -		
General 👻		
Meeting Title	XYZ Meeting	
Start Date	12/07/2016 V End Date 12/11/2016	\sim
Status	Occurred CLOSE	MEETING
Meeting Type		Q 🕂
Coordinator	John Samuels	् 🔳
Linked Expo		Q 🗄
Meeting Conflict	No Conflict Validation	\sim
Max Reg.	3 Avail. Space 0	
Description		

- 5. From the Filter drop-down menu, select Registered.
 - This displays only the meeting's Registrants.
- 6. For the first entry, click the **Status** field and from the drop-down menu select **Attended**.
- 7. You can use this method to change the Status for each Person individually.Click the **Change All** button.
- 8. From the Status drop-down menu, select Attended.

Ľ	Close Meeting Wizard			8
			0	
1		Update	Registration Status	
	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners	10135	Select a Status	
a -	Wade, Alexandra/U. Hardwick Physics AB	10135	Attended	
11 11			SAVE CANCEL	
H -				
4	Change All Change Selected			
	Click on finish to update registrant(s) information.			
	CANCEL	О ВА		

- 9. Click OK.
 - The Status changes to Attended for all Persons in the list.
 - Education credits assigned are saved to attendees' records.
- 10. Click **OK** to close the **Close Meeting Wizard**.
- 11. Click **OK** to update all **Registrant** information.
- 12. Select the Attendees tab.
 - Confirm that all three registrants are now listed under the Attendees tab.
- 13. Click Save and Close to close the Meetings record.

Meeting Views

From the Quick Search, enter the text Find Meeting.

Several selections will display:

Find Meeting - Brings back a list of Meetings and details by prompted value.Used for counts of Registrants, Wait List, Cancelled, No Show, etc.

Find Meeting Registrant Info (BASE VIEW) - Brings back a list of Meeting Registrants and details by prompted value with the focus on Persons information.

Find Meeting Registrant \$ (BASE VIEW) - Brings back a list of Meeting Registrants per Meeting and the revenue generated.

- 1. From the Quick Search, enter and run the Find Meeting Registrant (BASE VIEW).
- 2. Enter XYZ in the Meeting Name prompt.
- 3. Observe the **Results**.
 - Enables users to filter and view registrants by Attendee Status so users can track Wait Listed registrants, Attendees, Cancellations, etc.
 - As Base View results show fields from Persons, Meetings, Orders, and Registration services.

Find Meeting Reg	Find Meeting Registrant (BASE VIEW) Meeting Name: XYZ Meeting Attendee Status: <attendee status=""> Last, First Name: <last, first="" name=""></last,></attendee>					
. Z 🗎	1 C 🕸	More 🔻				
BADGE NAME	BADGE TITLE	ATTENDEE STATUS	MEETING NAME	PHONE AREA	PHONE	
Baka Lambert	President	Waiting	XYZ Meeting	803	736-2931	
Athena Scott	Marketing VP	Void From Cancellation	XYZ Meeting	916	491-3204	

Appendix







Objective	A.1
Defining Award Types	A.2
Tracking Award Nominations	A.3
Tracking Awards and Incentives	A.4

Objective

Users will be able to:

- Nominate Persons for Awards
- Track Awards from inception to conclusion

Overview

Many organizations offer incentives and awards to their employees and members. The Awards application allows organizations to track various awards and incentives programs. The application includes the ability to create many awards programs, to track awards nominees and finally to represent recipients of awards. Common programs include:

- Committee Years of Service Pins (and similar awards)
- Employee of the Month
- Sales Team Incentive Tracking

Defining Award Types

Before an organization can begin tracking awards in Aptify, the types of awards and incentives that will be offered by the organization must be defined.

The Award Types record tracks the name of the award as well as a description of the award type. Follow these steps to create a new award type:

- 1. Open a new record from the Award Types service.
 - The Award Types service is located in the Award Management application.
- 2. In the Award Type field, enter Innovation as the name of the award
- 3. In the Description field, enter Showing Outstanding Innovation for our organization.

\bigcirc Innovation (ID: 4) \times						
88	8	Î	Ð	C	▲	More 🗸
General 🗸						
Award Type	Innovation					
Description	Showing O	utstandin	g Innovatio	on for our	Organizatio	n.

4. Click Save and Close the record.

Tracking Award Nominations

Aptify's Award Management application includes the Awards Nomination service that can be used to track the award nomination process. By default, the system does **NOT** automatically convert a nomination to award.

Nominating a Person for an Award

The Awards Nomination record tracks the nomination process. Persons can be nominated for an award by another person or the person can apply for the incentive themselves, depending on the organization's award practices.

- 1. From the Awards dashboard, click on the New Award Nomination button.
- 2. From the Award Type drop-down list, select the Service award.
- 3. In the **Person Nominated** field, enter your **Persons** name or ID.
- 4. In the Nominated By field, enter 02 Alexandra Wade.
- 5. The Nomination Date field defaults to today's date.
- 6. From the **Status** drop-down list, keep **Pending** as the current status of the nomination, (the default). Once a person has been added as an award nominee, more information can be added or the person's nomination status can be modified at any time as necessary during the nomination process.
- 7. The available Status types are as follows:
 - **Pending** Selected by default. The process is pending, no decision made yet.
 - Approved Nominee has been accepted to receive specified award/incentive.
 - **Rejected** The nominee will not receive the specified award or incentive.
- 8. In the **Description** field, enter **Test**.
- 9. Save the record.

Award Nomination ID: 11 X					
88	🛗 🔟 🕙 C 🛕 More 🕶				
General 👻					
Award Type	Member of the Year				
Person Nominated	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners				
Nominated By	Wade, Alexandra/U. Hardwick Physics AB				
Nomination Date	01/14/2016 🗸				
Status	Pending 🗸				
Description	Test				

Tracking Awards and Incentives

The Awards Granted service can be used to track awards and incentives given out by an organization. A record in this service tracks information such as the types of awards given, the recipient(s), the location of award ceremony, etc.

- 1. Open a new Awards Granted record with one of the following methods:
 - From the Awards Granted service, open a new record.
 - From the Awards tab on a Persons record, open a new record.
- 2. From the Award Type drop-down list, select the Service award.
- 3. In the Person Awarded field, enter 01 Aiesha Baldwin
- 4. In the Date Achieved field, enter [today's date].
- 5. This award is the result of an accepted nomination; link the corresponding nomination to the award by specifying the previously created record in the **Award Nomination** field.
 - If this award was for more than one person, a second winner can be specified in the **Second Person Awarded** field.
- 6. In the Award Ceremony Location field, enter Hawaii
- 7. In the Other Benefit Provided field, enter Trip Awarded
- 8. In the Other Benefit Details field, enter All expenses paid trip to annual conference.
- 9. In the Memento Type field, enter Certificate.
- 10. In the Memento Type Details field, enter \$500.00 Amazon Gift Card.

Award Granted ID: 3 🗙	
	C 💧 More 🗸
Award Type Service Award	
Person Awarded Lambert, Baka	/Ottoman
Date Achieved 10/01/2011	Award Nomination 8
Second Person Awarded	
General 🗸	
Award Ceremony Location Hawaii	
Other Benefit Provided None	~
Other Benefit Details All expenses p	aid trip to annual conference.
Memento Type Certificate	\sim
Memento Type Details \$500.00 Amaz	on Gift Card.

- 11. Click **General** to see the drop-down list of add additional details which can be added about the award being granted or about the recipient(s)--Description, Photo, etc.
- 12. Save the record.

Appendix



Sales Force Automation

Objective	B.1
Creating Opportunities Records	B.2

Objective

Users will be able to:

- Create Opportunities Records
- Track Opportunities

Overview

Organizations have a growing need to support contact management and opportunity tracking related to their prospective customers. The Sales Force Automation (SFA) application is designed to bring an integrated approach to tracking the lead generation process to their CMS/AMS system. In addition, many organizations employ inside sales team members. Features like Call Scripting are central to ensuring a common message.

Creating Opportunities Records

- 1. Click on the Sales Force Automation application.
- 2. Click on the New Opportunity button from the dashboard.X
- 3. In the Name field, enter XYZ Opportunity.
- 4. From the Type drop-down list, select General.
- 5. In the Account Manager field, enter yourself as the primary contact for this opportunity.
- 6. In the **Person** field, enter a name for the primary contact person for this opportunity.
- 7. In the Company field, enter your XYZ Company as the name of the prospect.
- 8. In the **Requested On** field, enter today's date.
- 9. In the **Expected Decision Date**, Enter the date three days from today.
- 10. Look at the options for the Status, and Stage fields, but keep the defaults.
- 11. In the Source field, enter Referral (check the other possibilities).
- 12. Enter percentages in the Probabilities fields.
- 13. Click Save.

🗑 XYZ Opportunity (ID: 2682) 🗙					
i •	C (A	More 🕶		
XYZ Opportunity					
General				\sim	
				Q 🗄	
				Q 🗄	
John Samuels				Q 🔳	
Baldwin, Aiesha/D	anube Par	tners		۹ 💼	
Danube Partners				Q 📋	
/14/2016	\sim				
	~				
/17/2016	~				
	\sim				
Hold	~	Stage	Raw Lead	~]
ferral					् 📋
	Ma	nager Accept	tance Probability	0	
	XYZ Opportunity General General John Samuels Baldwin, Aiesha/D Danube Partners /14/2016 /17/2016	XYZ Opportunity General John Samuels Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners /14/2016 /17/2016 /17/2016 /17/2016 Mathematical Structure Model and a structure	Image: A contract of the second o	Image: A control of the second of	More XYZ Opportunity General XYZ Opportunity General John Samuels Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners Danube Partners Danube Partners /14/2016 /17/200 /17/2

- 14. Click **Status > Details** tab.
- 15. Observe the fields, especially the Commission Percent and Confidentiality Level.
- 16. Return to the Status tab.
- 17. Change the Status to **On Hold.**

Details 👻	Details 🗸					
Referred By		Q	+			
Detail Level	Category 🗸					
Commission Percent	100 Override Commission Percent					
Lost To		Q	+			
Prior Opportunity		Q	+			
Next Proposal		Q	+			
Decision By						
Confidentiality Level	None 🗸					
Confidentiality Comments						

- 18. From Details, open the **History** Tab.
- 19. Observe: the Status change history is recorded under this tab.

History	History -						
NEW	DIT DELETE IN PLACE EDI	T 🛧 🛧 🕹 🛓					
	APPROVAL STATUS	UPDAT DECISI	EFFECTI	STAGE	STATUS		
	Pending	End User	01/14/2 10:27:22 AM	Raw Lead	On Hold		

- 20. Click the Line Items tab
- 21. Open a new Line Item
- The Line Items tab stores information about the product set of goods and/or services being offered to the prospect in the opportunity's proposal and associated amounts.
- This tab stores the items that the organization is actively selling to the prospect as a solution to the requirements specified in the prospect's RFP (Request for Proposal).

Line Items record		8
General 🗸		
Product		۹ 🗄
Product Category		Q 🖪
Min. Amount	\$0.00	
Est. Amount	\$0.00	
Max Amount	\$0.00	
Manager Amount	\$0.00	
	OK AND NEW OK	CANCEL

- 22. Enter information as desired.
- 23. Save the record.

- 24. Click the Competitors Tab.
- 25. The Competitors record tracks information about any known companies competing for a particular opportunity.
- 26. Add a New Competitor's Record.
- 27. Observe the fields available to track your competition:

Competitors record	1		8
General 🗸			
Competitor		Q	Ŧ
Sales Person		_ <	Ð
Description			
Reseller ID		_ Q	÷
Status	Active		\sim
Rank	1st		\sim
Probability	0		
	Lost To		
LostToReason			\sim
			_
	OK AND NEW OK	CANC	EL

- **28.** Enter information as desired.
- 29. Save and Close the Record.

Appendix

 \bigcap



Reconciliation and Batching

Objective
Overview
Types of Batches 7.2
When to Batch
How to Reconcile and Batch 7.4
Correcting Common Accounting Errors 7.7
Accounting Periods
Accounts Receivable Report 7.12
Exercise 1: Create an Orders Batch 7.14
Cash Control Batches and Lock Boxes 7.17
Exercise 2: Create a Cash Control Batch 7.18
Summary 7.21

Objective

To properly process financial transactions and export them to an FMS, organizations must perform two processes: Reconciliation and Batching.

In this chapter, you will:

- Learn what reconciliation and batching are
- Understand when to reconcile and batch
- Create an Orders batch
- Review Locked Box functionality
- Create a Cash Control batch

Overview

Reconciliation is the process where organizations ensure that two corresponding sets of information, typically numerical, have the same totals. In Aptify, the most common reconciliation is for Payments and Scheduled transactions: Organizations must verify that the money they have received matches the amount of the Payment records. For Scheduled Transactions, organizations must verify that the FMS' Deferred Income GL Account balance matches the unbatched Scheduled Transactions in Aptify.

Aptify uses a "batching" process to aggregate the total value of all GL Entries on orders, payments, or scheduled transactions and export the results to an organization's Financial Management System. The GL batch aggregates, or sums, the individual entries in multiple orders, payments or scheduled transactions by GL account number and currency type. Batches can aggregate any number of records, although each record type, (Orders, Payments, Scheduled Transactions) must be batched separately.

Once records have been batched, Aptify does not allow changes to the records included in the batch. This ensures integrity between the data in the FMS and in Aptify. Each record indicates that it has been batched, and once batched, a user can no longer modify the record. Reconciliation must be done before batching to ensure that any errors are caught and corrected before the records are uneditable.

Types of Batches

There are three types of batches used to aggregate GL Entries and export them to an FMS and Cash Control Batches which are used for reconciliation:

Orders Batches: Can only be run on shipped orders that have not already been batched. Aggregates all the GL Entries found on an Orders record, and updates product inventory counts as necessary.

Payments Batches: Aggregates all GL Entries on Payments records that have not already been batched.

Scheduled Transaction Batches: Aggregates all GL Entries on Scheduled Transaction records. Should only be run on scheduled transactions that occur on the date of the batch or earlier and have not already been batched. Aptify recommends expanding schedule transaction groups regularly, prior to batching, so that scheduled transactions are ready to be batched.

Cash Control Batches: Link payment receipts, such as checks and check numbers to Payment records. Can be generated either manually or via the Lock Box Import wizard. This is covered in greater detail later in the chapter.

When to Batch

Each organization must decide how often to batch based on their business processes and needs. The batching frequency depends on the type of record being batched, and an organization's size:

Orders Batches: Aptify strongly recommends all organizations batch Orders at least weekly for three reasons. First, the batching process can take longer if many orders are included, so batching regularly reduces the number of orders in any given batch. Second, if an organization needs to regenerate GL Entries, a smaller number of orders will again save time. Third, batching regularly keeps Aptify and the FMS more synchronized.

Payment Batches: Aptify strongly recommends that organizations with a large payment volume batch Payments daily. The batches should include only the payments from the previous day, to ensure that all payments, up until 11:59 PM (such as from online orders) are accounted for.

Smaller volume organizations may choose to batch weekly. (A week may begin on Monday morning at 12:00 AM and go through Sunday night at 11:59 PM.)

Organizations should never batch monthly for several reasons:

- Customers expect money to be withdrawn from their bank account in a timely manner, and this should not occur until after the Aptify payments are batched. The payment batch itself should be completed prior to depositing funds because there may be mismatches between Aptify's Payment records and the physical payments; once the funds are deposited, it is extremely difficult to track down the error.
- Because credit card payments are automatically deposited, the more frequently you reconcile and batch, the less difficult it is to find mismatches between Aptify and payment processor.
- Organizations typically prefer to have funds in their bank account sooner rather than later and monthly deposits would delay the process.
- Just as with orders, batching regularly keeps Aptify and an organization's FMS synchronized.

Scheduled Transaction Batches: Organizations should batch all scheduled transactions on the day after the month's end. This is to ensure that any new scheduled transactions are included. For example, membership dues may be a time period starting January 1 through December 31. In this case, the scheduled transactions would be batched on the first of each month, for the previous month. January's revenue, for instance, would be recognized on January 31st, but batched on February 1st.

How to Reconcile and Batch

As described earlier, reconciliation is the process of ensuring the amount of money listed in Aptify matches the actual money received and batching is how the Aptify information is transferred to an FMS. Organizations must reconcile Payments prior to batching and Scheduled Transactions after batching. Aptify includes many sample batching and reconciliation views in version 5.5.5 and greater.

Orders Views

Orders do not need to be reconciled prior to batching. This is because the information for an Order is entirely within Aptify; Orders are created either via an online store, which creates an Orders record in Aptify, or an order is manually created by an employee. Therefore, employees will only need three views to determine which orders should be batched:

Orders Ready for Batching: Based on a shipped date range entered, shows all regular and cancellation orders that have been shipped and have not already been batched.

Order Batch Verification: Shows all unbatched orders with a taken status, that were created on or before the Ship Date entered. This view should be run after the orders in the Orders Ready for Batching view have been batched to determine if any of the orders should be shipped and batched. The primary purpose of this view is to catch unshipped orders.

Order Batch Exceptions: Shows unbatched regular and cancellation orders with shipped status, that were shipped on or before the date entered. Run this view after the orders in the Orders Ready for Batching view have been batched to determine if the orders should be batched or if they failed to batch. This view should always be empty; if it contains orders there may be a problem with your shipping or batching process.

These views should all be run based on the frequency recommended earlier. Note that organizations may choose to batch orders based on the Taken By employee, Product Category, or by Product to create smaller batches that easier to analyze and reconcile. In these cases it is especially important to use Order Batch Verification and Order Batch Exceptions views.

Order Date vs Ship Date

If an organization autoships all orders (the order is shipped as soon as the record is created) then the order date and ship date will always be the same. Therefore, grouping the orders for batching by either date should produce the same results. However, occasionally an order may fail to ship for a variety of reasons. To catch these unshipped orders, use the Order Batch Verification view listed above.

If an organization autoships some orders, but also has products that need to be physically mailed (inventoried products or products that require fulfillment), then some Orders' order dates and ship dates will be different. In these cases, batching using the ship date still applies because the order's revenue should be recognized when the product is mailed. For example, if an order is placed on January 30 but requires fulfillment and is mailed on February 2, the ship date will be February 2 and included in a February batch, along with any orders placed and autoshipped on February 2.

If an organization does not autoship all orders, and instead ships some orders at a later date, the order date and ship date may be different. However, if the products are not physically being mailed on the ship date, their GL entries should be officially recognized on the order date.

In these cases, the organization should modify the Orders Ready for Batching view to use the Order Date because the orders may have been shipped past the end of the accounting period. For example, an order could be taken on January 30 but not shipped in Aptify until February 2. These orders officially occurred during the January accounting period and should be grouped with January accounting period's batches.

Note that for all reconciliation and batching views, it is critical to use date fields with no time index (1/1/2016 vs 1/1/2016 3:45 PM) to avoid incorrectly excluding records from views. These plain date fields are typically indicated with "NoTime" at the end of the field name, such as with OrderDate_NoTime.

Payments Views

Aptify payments must be reconciled prior to batching. This process involves checking the payments totals in Aptify and comparing them with the physical cash and check amounts, and merchant account totals, which include credit card and ACH payments. Organizations will need the following views to properly reconcile and batch:

Cash and Checks Ready for Batching: Shows all unbatched cash and check payments based on the payment date range entered. The view payment total should match the total value of all cash and checks received for these payments. If the totals do not match, compare each check to the payment record in the view.

Credit Card Payments Ready for Batching: Based on the deposit date range entered, shows all credit card payments that have not been batched and have not had any exceptions. The deposit date is used because it is when the payment was captured and appears in the merchant account as received. The view payment total should match the merchant account deposit report, which is commonly known as a **settlement report.** If the totals do not match, compare each item on the settlement report to the payment record in the view.

ACH Payments Ready for Batching: Shows posted ACH (Wire Transfer) payments that have not been batched, based on the date range entered. The view payment total should match the merchant account report. If the totals do not match, compare each item on the merchant account report to the payment record in the view.

Refund Vouchers Ready for Batching: Based on the date range entered, shows Refund Vouchers that have not been batched. When reconciling at month end, ensure the batched refund payments for the month are reflected in the FMS' clearing/refund account.

Credit Memo Payments Ready for Batching: Shows Credit Memo payments that have not been batched based on the date range entered. This view is typically run on the first day of the month to capture the previous month's payments.

Bad Debt Write-Off Payments Ready for Batching: Shows all Bad Debt Write-Off Payments that have not been batched, based on the date range entered. Typically done at yearend. Accountants should set write-off processing guidelines for their organization. Bad debt is discussed in further detail later in this chapter. **Unbatched Posted Payments Verification:** Shows all posted payments that have not yet been batched and is used to catch overlooked payments. Ideally, this view should be empty. Run this view after batching all other payment types for the month.

Unbatched Unposted Payments Verification: Shows all unposted payments that have not yet been batched. This view may include credit cards with an exception status, for example, bounced payments. Also included pending payments that cannot be posted. Review payments in this view to confirm that they cannot yet be posted and batched.

These views should all be run based on the frequency recommended earlier. Note that organizations may choose to batch some payment types based on the Taken By employee to make the views easier to analyze and reconcile. In these cases it is especially important to use the Unbatched Posted Payments Verification and Unbatched Unposted Payments Verification views.

Scheduled Transaction Views

With scheduled transactions, organizations must batch for the month before reconciling. To reconcile scheduled transactions, organizations should examine any transactions that were not included in the month's batch to determine if they should have been batched in the current period or a previous period. Organizations should use the following views to batch and reconcile:

Scheduled Transactions Ready for Batching: Shows all scheduled transactions that have not yet been batched, based on the date range entered.

Scheduled Transactions Batch Verification: Shows all unbatched Scheduled Transactions that are less than or equal to the date entered. This view should be empty; if it contains records there is likely an issue with the product's subscription settings, such as with join date or subscription start date.

Future Scheduled Transactions Batch Verification: Shows all unbatched Scheduled Transactions that are greater than or equal to the date entered. Run this view to verify that scheduled transactions are not incorrectly set to a future date.

These views should all be run based on the monthly frequency recommended earlier.

Batching Automation

Organizations can automate the batching process for orders, some payment types, and scheduled transactions. This can save time and effort. However, whether an organization chooses to automate depends on its business practices.

Aptify discourages automating the batching process for payments other than Cash and Checks, which should only be automated if they are reconciled using Cash Control Batches, which are discussed later in this chapter. Organization should never automate credit card or ACH payment batches.
Correcting Common Accounting Errors

Overview

Organizations will occasionally encounter mistakes due to both bad data entry or other oversights. The following lists the most frequently found situations and how to resolve them. Note that the steps taken to correct errors differ greatly based on whether or not the information that needs to be adjusted has already been batched. Organizations should **never manually edit their database through SQL** to correct errors; this severely compromises the integrity of the accounting system and presents a serious audit risk.

Misapplied Payments

Checks are the most frequent source of incorrect data entry. Mistakes can include incorrect amounts, applying a check to the wrong order, or attributing a check to the wrong customer.

Incorrect Amount: If the payment has not yet been batched, users can simply open the record, find the relevant payment line, adjust the amount, and then save the record. The payments GL Entries are then updated.

If the payment has already been batched, users should create a negative payment for the order or orders, using the original payment type. They should then re-create the same payment with the corrected amount. Do not issue an actual refund to the customer via the FMS.

Never modify a credit card payment amount, even if it has only been authorized as the authorization will be for an incorrect value. For overpayments, credit cards can either be fully refunded and then re-charged for the correct amount (after contacting the customer) or the organization can issue a partial refund for the excess amount. For underpayments, contact the customer and obtain approval for the additional amount, then create the payment.

Incorrect Order or Payee: Unlike with payment amounts, both credit card and check payments can have the order ID and payee changed.

If the payment has not been batched, users can again modify the payment record directly. Open the payment and edit each payment line to link to the correct order ID. Users should also update the automatically generated comments field on the payment line to reflect the correct order ID. If the payee information needs to be changed, clear the Person and/or Company fields, and re-enter the correct details. When finished making changes, save the record to update the payment's GL Entries.

If the payment has been batched, and was a check or cash payment, users should create a negative payment using the original payment type, and apply it to the original order or orders. They should then re-create the same payment with the corrected order ID or payee.

If the payment has been batched and was via credit card, issue a full refund using the **Refund This Payment** button on the payment record. Then contact the customer to obtain approval to charge their card again for the appropriate order.

Bounced Checks

If an organization receives notice from their bank that a check has bounced, first find the corresponding Aptify payment. Next, create a new negative payment for the original amount using the same payment type, and apply it to the same order or orders. This credits cash in Aptify so that when the negative payment is batched, the FMS will reflect the correct cash total. Finally, if your organization charges a fee for bounced checks, create a new order for the customer for an NSF (Non-Sufficient Funds) product.

Incorrect GL Accounts on Products

If an order contains a product with incorrect GL account information, and has not been batched, adjust the product's GL accounts. Then, when batching, select Regenerate GL Entries to correct any orders with the old GLs.

If the order has already been batched, users must make adjustment in their FMS only. **Do not bypass Aptify protections by editing Aptify records via SQL.**

Accounting Periods

Overview

Accounting periods are an Aptify record that organize batches from a time frame into one record. For example, for the month of March there may be one orders batch, four payments batches, and one scheduled transaction batch. Batches should be linked to an accounting period when running the batching wizards. By linking all the batch records to a single accounting period, organizations can more easily analyze the transactions and create reports.

Accounting periods are also useful for grouping transactions into periods, by GL Account. For example, an organization may wish to see every debit or credit to a GL account for an order, payment, or scheduled transaction. If using accounting periods this can be done directly in the accounting period's record rather than having to create a separate view.



Be aware that when an accounting period is closed, that accounting period can no longer be assigned to new batches. However, this does not prevent transactions (orders, payments, scheduled transactions) from being dated to a time that falls within the period.

Batch Effective Dates and Accounting Periods

When creating batches, users can enter a batch effective date which is the cut-off date for any records that are included in the batch. For example, if batching on December 12 for the last week's orders beginning December 5 and through December 11, the batch effective date is December 11th, since it includes orders on that date. Note that the batch date does not have to be the end of the accounting period or month. Rather, it can be in the middle of the period, as in the last example.

Accounting Period Month Ends

Records in a batch should not cross accounting periods or a month's end, so organizations should adjust their periods accordingly. For instance, if an organization normally batches orders weekly, Monday through Sunday, but the month end falls in the middle of the week, on Wednesday, the organization needs two separate batches. Consider the week of November 28th, 2016 through Sunday, December 4th 2016. The accounting period ends on Wednesday, November 30th, so there will be one batch for November 28-30, with a batch effective date of November 30th and an accounting period of November 2016. The second batch will be for December 1-4, with a batch effective date of December 4 and it will be assigned to the December accounting period.

Figure C.2 Accounting Period End Mid-Week

Account Period Details and GL Reports

Users can use the GL Account Period Details service to create views that display the GL Entries for any given account. The views can show the net debit or credit to the account which makes it easy to analyze account balances for any given period.



In addition to this service, users can also use base views to create views of Order Lines and Payment Lines, with Orders and Payments, to analyze financial data by product or product category. Some of these base views may already be included in your Aptify installation. Both the GL Account Period Details service and Orders and Payment views can be used to find the appropriate data; the method chosen will depend on the organization's business practices and level of detail desired.

Writing Off Bad Debt

At year end, organizations should find any orders with a balance that they do not expect will be paid and record the amount as bad debt to indicate a loss. This is done by applying a Bad Debt Write-Off payment to the order. The Bad Debt Write-Off payment type has its own GL account which records the total amount of bad debt.

Aptify includes a Bulk Write Off wizard which applies bad debt write off payments to individual orders or an entire view of orders. This brings the positive balance on the order to zero. Note that the wizard currently cannot write off credit balances, so organizations will need to manually create payments for these orders using the same payment type.

Figure C.4 Bulk Write-Off Wizard

Accounts Receivable Report

Overview

Aptify includes an Accounts Receivable report, called the A/R Trial Balance report, which is used as supporting documentation for an organization's financial statements. The report lists all orders that have a positive or negative balance prior to the date entered and is run monthly after completing orders and payments batching. This helps reconcile orders and ensure that the outstanding order balance total on the report matches the accounts receivable GL totals in the FMS. For example, if an order was taken on November 1, but not paid for until December 1, and the report was run on December 3 using November 30 as the period end date, the order would still show a balance on the report. The order would not, however, have a balance in Aptify on December 3.

Figure C.5 AR Trial Balance Report In Aptify 5.5.5 and later, the A/R Trial Balance report uses the batch effective date to

In Aptify 5.5.5 and later, the A/R Trial Balance report uses the batch effective date to determine which orders and payments are included in the report. This is in contrast to using the order date and payment date to calculate whether a payment applies to an order in an accounting period. For example, if the batch effective date is November 30, and an order was placed on November 1, but not paid until December 3, the report will reflect a balance as long as the payment is properly batched in December with a December effective date. If the payment is incorrectly attributed to November, the report will show no balance.

A/R Trial Balances with Multiple A/R Accounts

Organizations may use multiple A/R Accounts for different products so orders may have GL Entries for more than one A/R account. The A/R Trial Balance report, however, cannot divide order balances into separate reports when it is run; the entire order balance is included in the report. This is because each individual order has its own Order ID, which for financial integrity and audit purposes, cannot be listed in multiple A/R reports. For example, if an order contains two products, the Digital Space Pen, and a Sampco Baseball Hat, and each product costs \$250 and has its own A/R account, the order total in the A/R Trial Balance report will show \$500 for the order.

This functionality is standard for any FMS' A/R report; Aptify will not split the order balance into separate A/R reports with their respective totals. Organizations that wish to see balance totals for individual A/Rs should examine each A/R's GL account in their FMS, and then sum their totals to reconcile with Aptify's Trial Balance report.

Some organizations may need to create separate reports for business purposes. In these cases, they should never create orders that contain products with different A/R GLs. They can then use views to separate orders with different A/Rs and run the Trial Balance report on each view.

Exercise 1: Create an Orders Batch

In this exercise, use the Order Batch wizard to export the Order information from the orders you have placed.

- 1. Navigate to the Home dashboard and locate the view of Orders Ready For Batching.
- 2. **Right-click** in the view and select **Order Options**, then select **Create Order Batch** from the context menu.
- 3. The Order Batch wizard appears. Click Next.
- 4. The wizard reports the number of records that qualify for the batch, grouped by currency, and the number of records that have been excluded.
 - Because the view filters unshipped and batched orders, there should not be any excluded orders.
 - Click the box button in the far-right of the Details column to see a list of the included and excluded orders.

Figure C.6 Qualifying Orders



6. Leave the regenerate **Regenerate Entries** checkboxes **unselected**, then click **Next**.

- In general, you should only regenerate entries if you have updated COGS information or have made changes to the system's GL accounts since the orders you are batching were created.
- Be aware that regenerating entries may take a significant amount of time.

7. The wizard displays the debit and credit totals for the orders in the batch, by currency.

- If you want to link the batch to an Accounting Period record, you could click the box in the Acct. Period column and browse to the desired record.
- Users should update the Batch Effective Date to be the end of the accounting period and not the current date.



8. Select the Approval checkbox for the US Dollar line, then click Next.

10. Double-click the **entry**, then click **OK** and browse to the Windows **desktop**. By default, Aptify supports exporting the results to a Tab Delimited and Comma Delimited (CSV).

11. Click Save.

- A confirmation dialog appears. Click **OK**.
- 12. Click **OK** to close the Batch Results window and exit the Orders Batch wizard.

- 13. Open the first orders record in the view.
 - Observe that the Batch ID now appears under the Order Level field.

Figure C.9 Batch ID Listed on Order



• The Batches record displays a summary of all the Orders included in the batch, their GL Entries, and Inventory Ledger Entries.

Figure C.10 Batches Record

Cash Control Batches and Lock Boxes

Overview

Cash Control Batches are records that track receipt of a physical payment, such as a cash or check, and connect that information to a Payments record in Aptify. This is done to ensure that the actual money received corresponds to the Payments record that represents the money. On the Cash Control Batch record, users enter the information about the money received, such as the check number, and the amount. The corresponding Payments record is then linked to the Cash Control Batch record.

Note that Payments records can be linked to a Cash Control Batch more easily by entering the Cash Control Batch record's ID when initially entering the payment details at the time of the order. This is particularly useful for organizations that create orders and accept payments at events, such as meetings or conferences.

Approving Cash Control Batches

Once all receipts have been entered, the total money received must match the amount on the Payments records before the Cash Control Batch record can be approved. This ensures that all payments received are applied to customers' orders correctly for A/R reporting purposes and creates a clear audit trail between an order payment and the actual cash receipt.

Lock Boxes

Organizations sometimes have banks process checks and other cash transactions on their behalf. In these cases, the bank may provide a lock box file, which is a summary of all the payments received. This file can then be imported into Aptify using the Lock Box Import wizard which will automatically create a Cash Control Batches record and the receipt information.

In addition to saving significant time entering cash receipts, using the Lock Box Import wizard provides users access to payment matching and posting functionality that is not available when manually creating cash receipts:

Payment Matching: Users can click the Match button to compare the receipts to existing Payments and automatically link the appropriate Payments to the Cash Control Batch. Aptify identifies any exceptions such as missing orders, overpayments, and underpayments.

Payment Posting: If a Payment record has not been created for a cash receipt, users can click the **Post** button to create the Payments record and link it to the Cash Control Batch. Users can also apply overpayments to unshipped orders, or create a refund payment.

Exercise 2: Create a Cash Control Batch

In this exercise, create a new Cash Control Batch record and add an entry to record receipt of the pre-paid check you used to pay for the pre-paid deposit. Then, link the pre-paid deposit Payments record to the Cash Control Batch.

- 1. Navigate to the **Cash Control Batches** service, located under the **Accounting** application.
- 2. Create a new Cash Control Batches record.
 - Today's date is automatically listed in the Date Entered field.
 - The employee creating the batch is automatically listed in the Entered By field.
- 3. In the **Deposit Date** field, enter the date the checks will be deposited to the organization's bank account. In this example, use **tomorrow's date**.
- 4. In the Customer field, enter Aiesha Baldwin.
- 5. In the Amount field, enter 500.
- 6. In the Type field, enter Pre-Paid Check, then click Add.
- 7. A cash receipt appears in the view.

Figure C.11 Cash Control Batch Entry

- 8. Double-click the entry to open it. A Cash Detail record, appears.
 - Observe that the Lock Box information area is grayed out, and inactive. Had this receipt been created using the Lock Box Import wizard, these fields and options would be available.
- 9. In the Check Number field, enter 12345.
 - This corresponds to the check number used for purchasing the pre-paid deposit.

Figure C.12 Cash Detail Record

- 10. Click OK, then save, but do not close, the Cash Control Batch record.
- 11. Navigate to the **Order Entry** dashboard, and open the **Payments** record for the **Pre-Paid Deposit** product.
- 12. Click the **Details** tab.



13. In the Cash Control Batch field, enter 1, then press enter.

- 14. Save and Close the Payments record, and return to the Cash Control Batch record.
- 15. Click the Payments Posted tab.
 - The Payment has now been linked to the Cash Control Batch.
- 16. Click Approve.
 - A confirmation dialog, appears. Click Yes.

Figure C.14 Linked Payments

17. The Date Approved and Approved By fields are completed.

- Users must first click De-Approve before they can make changes to the Cash Control Batch.
- 18. Save and Close the record.

Summary

- Use Orders, Payments, and Scheduled Transaction Batches to export accounting information to an FMS.
- Aptify recommends that organizations batch information regularly
- Use Cash Control Batches to ensure cash received matches Payments records.
- Using Lock Box functionality can save time creating Cash Control Batches.

Appendix



Expos

Objective	. D.1
Creating an Expos Record	. D.3
Adding Expo Prices	. D.4
Creating Floorplans	. D.5
Creating Booths Using the Booth Generator	. D.7
Using the Booth Combination Wizard	. D.11
Linking Meetings to Expos	. D.15
Taking an Order for a Booth	. D.17
Canceling an Expo Order	. D.20
Using the Floorplan Copy Wizard	. D.22

Objective

Within Aptify, you can create and track Expos and design the layout of booths in the Expo's venue. After completing this chapter, you will be able to:

- Create a new Expo
- Create a Floorplan
- Link a Meeting to an Expo
- Work with Booths
- Order a Booth

Overview

The Expos service provides an easy-to-use interface where an organization can create and manage all aspects of an exposition, including floorplans, booths, dates of the exposition, and contact information for the company and persons sponsoring the exposition. The Expo Management functionality is used to plan and manage a single expo, multiple expos, or for an exposition that is part of a larger event. Each Expos record tracks the total units of booth inventory, as well as any meetings that may be linked to the exposition.

Expos are created as products with extended characteristics. Creation of an expos product requires the following items to be set up beforehand:

- All GL accounts required by the organization to track expo finances.
- One or more Product Categories records for Expo products that are associated with the GL accounts created to track expo finances.
- A Product Types record named Expo that enables the Expo tab to display on the Products record. (This is included with the standard Aptify installation.)
- A Products record for the expo, associated with the expo product category and product type.

Creating an Expos Record

- 1. Click the Expo Management dashboard.
- 2. Click Expos service; click the New Expos button.
 - An Expo record is a Products record with **Type** set to **Expo**. There is also an Expo tab added to the Products form.
- 3. In the Name field, enter XYZ Expo (where XYZ are your initials).
- 4. In the Category field, enter Exhibits. Note that the Type field defaults to Expo.
- 5. Click the **Expo** tab.

Expos > General Tab

- 6. The General tab appears.
- 7. In the Expo Name field, enter XYZ Expo (where XYZ are your initials).
- 8. In the Vendor field, enter your Company.
- 9. In the Vendor Contact field, enter your Persons record.
- 10. In the Start Date field, enter next Monday's date.
- 11. In the End Date field, enter next Friday's date.
- 12. In the Setup Date field, enter this Saturday's date.
- 13. In the Setup Req. Date field, enter this Sunday's date.
- 14. Click Save.

📄 XYZ Exp	oo (ID: 9924) 🗙	
8	🛗 🕙 C 🛕 More 🗸	
Name	e XYZ Expo	
Category	y Exhibits	Q 📋
Туре	Expo	~
Parent Produc	t	۹ 🖽
Expo 👻		
General 🗸		
Expo Name	XYZ Expo	
Vendor	Danube Partners Q	
Vendor Contact	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners	
Prior Expo	Q 🗄	
Start Date	12/26/2016 🗸	
End Date	12/30/2016 🗸	
Setup Date	12/24/2016 🗸	
Setup Req. Date	12/25/2016 🗸	

Adding Expo Prices

Establishing prices for booth space at an Expo is different than setting prices for other products. An exhibitor pays for booth space at an Expo. If these booths are all the same size, then you can charge a uniform amount per booth to each exhibitor. However, if you offer booths of varying sizes you can define a base unit (such as a base booth size) and then configure expo pricing based on the number of units that the booth occupies.

Example 1: An exhibitor rents floor space to accommodate a 10x10 booth (100 sq feet). If all of the booths at the Expo are the same size, 1 unit can equal 1 booth. In this case, you would use the following pricing rule if one booth costs \$1000.00:

Dimensions	Number of Units	Total Cost for Booth	
10x10 Booth (100 sq ft)	1 unit	\$1000.00	

Example 2: Your venue supports two booth sizes: an 8x10 booth (80 sq ft) and a 10x10 (100 sq ft). In this case, you define a unit based on a common denominator between the two booth sizes. Therefore, 1 unit equals 20 sq ft, and the 8x10 booth is 4 units (4x20 = 80), and the 10x10 booth is 5 units (5x20=100). If you establish a price of \$200 per unit, then these booths would have the following prices:

Dimensions	Number of Units	Total Cost for Booth
8x10 Booth (80 sq ft)	4 units 1 unit = \$200	\$800.00
10x10 Booth (100 sq ft)	5 units 1 unit = \$200	\$1000.00

Adding Member and Non-Member Prices

- 1. On the Expo record, click the **Expo > Pricing Table** tab.
- 2. Click New to open a new Prices record.
- 3. In the Name field, enter Member Price.
- 4. In the Price field, enter \$100. From Member Type drop-down menu, select Member.
- 5. Click **OK**.
- 6. Click New. In the Name field, enter Non-Member Price.
- 7. In the Price field, enter \$200.
- 8. Click to select the **Default** box to indicate this is the default price for the product.
- 9. From the Member Type drop-down menu, select Non-Member.
- 10. Click **OK**.
- 11. Save and Close the Expos record.

Creating Floorplans

A Venue can have one or more Floorplans that define the possible layouts of the venue space. Floorplans are tied to Expos.

In this exercise, you will create a new floorplan.

- 1. From the **Floorplans service**, open the **Floorplans** record (or use the New Floorplan Wizard)
- 2. Open a New Floorplans Record link.
- 3. Click the red Floorplans link to the left of the Floorplans field.
 - The New Floorplan Wizard launches automatically.



- 4. Click Next to continue.
- 5. Select Create Blank Floorplan.
- 6. Click Next.
- 7. Click **Finish** to create the blank floorplan.

- 8. In the Name field, enter XYZ Expo Floorplan.
- 9. In the Venue field, enter Conf Hall.
 - Open the Venue record by clicking the red field link to the left of Venue field.
 - Observe the information that can be stored for a **Venue** and **Room** these records are created and controlled by **Administrators** of Aptify.
- 10. From the Unit of Measure drop-down list (if not already selected), select Feet.
- 11. In the Width field, enter 200, and in the Length field, enter 100.
- 12. In the Drawing Scale field, enter 100, and in the Page Scale field, enter 1.
 - These two parameters form a ratio that defines the scale of the floorplan map. In this exercise, the scale is 1:100.
- 13. In the **Default Width** field, enter 10.
- 14. In the Default Length field, enter 10.
- 15. In the **Default Units** field, enter **1**.
 - In this exercise, the default unit size is a booth that is 10x10 (100 square feet).
- 16. From the Status drop-down list, select Arrange & Assign.
- 17. In the Next Booth Name field, enter XYZ Booth.
- 18. In the **Booth Increment** field, enter **1**.
- 19. Click Save.

XYZ Floorplan (ID: 1)		8
B B B	🗊 🕙 C 🛕 More 🕶	
General 🗸		
Name Description	XYZ Floorplan	
Venue	XYZ Convention Center	् 📋
Unit Of Measure	Feet	~
Width	200	
Length	100	
Drawing Scale	100	
Page Scale	1	
Default Width	10	
Default Length	10	
Default Units	1	
Status	Arrange & Assign	Q 🔳
Drawing File		
	Allow Copies	
Date Opened	~	
Opened By		
Next Booth Name	XYZ Booth	
Booth Increment	1	
Floorplan System	ExpoCAD	_ < 🔳
External Floorplan ID		
Last Synchronization Date	× .	
Comments		
External Rate Plan		

Creating Booths Using the Booth Generator

- 1. Click the **Booths** tab on the *XYZ* Expo Floorplan record.
- 2. Click the Booth Generator button.

🗱 Floorplans ID: 1			_ 🗆 🗡					
🚽 😼 📲 🗙 📋 🛗 (🎽 🗉 🦫 🗞 🏎	🏪 🍓 🛞 🎲 🌬	🤌 💿 🕕 📮					
General Booths Commen	General Booths Comments Attachments							
🖹 💕 🗙 🚛 📊 Rej	ports 🕌 📲 Add To	List 📳 💲 厚						
Booths Linked to	o Floorplan #1							
ID	Name	Description	# of Units					
Booth Generator			0 Records					

- 3. In the Starting Location section, select the option in the upper left-hand corner.
 - With this option selected, the Booth Generator will begin labeling booths from the upper left-hand corner.
- 4. Change the Initial Number to 1.
- 5. Select the Horizontal option in the Incrementation Rules section.
- 6. Click the Apply Rules button in the Horizontal section.
 - The Adjacent and Aisle Separation fields update automatically.
 - Leave the Number of adjacent Vertical booths prior to aisle separation set to 5.
 - These settings determine booth layout and numbering.



- 7. Click Generate Grid.
 - The Booth Generator adds booths and aisles to the floorplan.
- 8. Select Booth 101 and click the Space button.
 - You can use this option to add spaces within the floorplan.
- 9. Select the Space cell and click the **Booth** button.
 - The Space is changed back to a Booth.
- 10. Select the blank Booth and click the Booth Names button.
 - The Booth is renumbered back to 101.

Booth Ger	nerator									23
-Starting L	ocation	Booth	Names (Example:)	XYZ Booth	n100)				
Flo	orplan [©]	D Pret	Prefix XYZ Booth Suffix Initial Number 100							
0	0		Incrementation Rules							
XYZ Floor	plan		Horizont	al 🗛	ply Rules		Vertical	Арр	ly Rules]
200 x 100 Booth: 10 :	(W x L) x10 (W x L)		Δdi	acent 2			Adia	acent 99		- I
Booth Unit	s: 1 Foot	. Δi	sle Sena	ration 2		_	isle Senar	ation 1		-
Onit of Me	asure. reel		310 Ocpu	2			abie oopui	anon 1		
Gene	rate Grid		umber of	adiacent	Vertical bo	ooths prior	to aisle se	eparation:	5	- 1
	0	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	-
0	100	102	104	106	108		110	112	114	
10										_ 11
20	101	103	105	107	109		111	113	115	
30	200	202	204	206	208		210	212	214	
40										_
50	201	203	205	207	209		211	213	215	
60	300	302	304	306	308		310	312	314	
70										
80	301	303	305	307	309		311	313	315	-
→				1						Þ.
Booth	Aisle	Space	Boot	h Names]			ОК	Can	cel

11. Click OK.

- Be patient while the system creates the necessary Booths records.
- If only one booth shows up in the Booths view, refresh the view to show all of the booths.
- 12. Double-click the first **Booths** entry in the Floorplan's Booth tab to open the corresponding Booths record.
- 13. Add 3 to the Maximum# field (in the Booth Registrant Information section).
- 14. Review the format of the Booths record.

XYZ Booth100 (ID: 1) X							
8	8	Î	Ð	G	4	More	
General 🗸							
Name Description	XYZ Boo	th100					
Floorplan	XYZ Floo	orplan					् 🔳
XCoord	5		YC	oord 9	5		
Width	10		Le	ngth 1	10		
# of Units	1			Area 1	00		
Booth Registr	ant Inform	ation					
Maximum #	# 3		Co	mplime	entary 0		
Surcharge	Flat Amo	unt 🗸 Si	urcharge A	mount	\$0.00		Merged
Merged Inte	Booth]
Order Information							
Linked Order 10090							
Linked Person Pintaro, Jessica/Ottoman							
Linked C	ompany	Ottoman					

15. Save and Close the Booths record.

Using the Booth Combination Wizard

You use the Booth Combination Wizard to combine one or more booths into a larger booth or to break up a combined booth to two or more smaller booths.

Combining Booths

- 1. Open the XYZ Expo Floorplan record's Booths tab (if not already open).
- 2. Click the Booth Combination Wizard icon to launch the Booth Combination Wizard.

🗱 Floorplans ID: 1			
🔙 😼 🏪 🗙 🚑 🖊 (🎽 📃 🐎 🗞 🍡	🖥 🍓 🚱 🎲 🕶 🖗	ے 🚯 🤣 🔇
General Booths Comment	ts Attachments		
🗄 🖆 🛩 🗙 🛛 🛍 🎙	🕯 🗟 🔟 🚱 🏹	ł	
Booths Linked to	Floorplan #1 🛛 🖪	Booth Combination Wizard	
ID	Name	Description	# of Uni 🔺
1	JMS Booth1		
2	JMS Booth3		
3	IMS Bootb5		
			102 records

- 3. Click **Next** to continue.
- 4. Enter XYZ Expo Floorplan in the Floorplan field and click Next.





- 5. Select Combine booth records to create a larger booth and click Next.
- 6. Place a check mark in the **Selected** box for the following booths: Booth1, Booth3, Booth5, Booth7, and Booth9. Note: You may need to scroll through the list of booths to find the needed booths.

BoothCombinationWizard	Calaat Daatha ta				<u>- 0 ×</u>
A ptify [™]	The grid displays all Floorplan). Please c and click Next to pro	of the available booths in the heck the booths that you wish peeed.	e selected floorplan (JMS Exp n to combine into a larger boo	o th	
DUUTI	Booth ID	Booth Name	Number of Units	Selected	
DUUIN	1	JMS Booth1	1	 ✓ 	
COMBINATION	2	JMS Booth3	1	 Image: A start of the start of	
Statement in the local division of the local	3	JMS Booth5	1		
Render	4	JMS Booth7	1	✓	
	5	JMS Booth9	1		
S of the Way is	7	JMS Booth13	1		
	10	JMS Booth19	1		
	12	JMS Booth23	1		_
Wizard					
	<u> </u>	ancel <u>B</u> ack	Next		Einish

- 7. Click Next.
- 8. Place a check mark in the Surviving Booth box for Booth1 and click Next.

BoothCombinationWizard					
Aptify™ BOOTH	Select Surviving You have selected be designated as th a customer. The o and will no longer b Please select the su	Booth 5 booths to combine into e surviving booth. This t ther booths will be marke e available for sale to cus urviving booth and click N	a larger booth. One of booth will be the one t d as combined into the tomers. ext to continue.	of the booths must nat is assigned to surviving booth	
COMBINATION	Booth ID	Booth Name		Surviving Booth	
A REAL PROPERTY AND A REAL PROPERTY.	1	JMS Booth1			
Rerdner Dublications inc.	2	JMS Booth3			
	3	JMS Booth5			
A DE LA CALLAR	4	JMS Booth7			
	5	JMS Booth9			
Wizard	5 Items				
	<u></u>	ancel <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext		Einish

- 9. Review the settings for the new combined booth and click Finish.
- 10. Click No to combine another set of booths.

Separating Booths

At times it may be necessary to separate booths after they have been combined. The Booth Combination Wizard offers the flexibility to separate booths.

- 1. Open the XYZ Expo Floorplan record's Booths tab (if not already open).
- 2. Click the Booth Combination Wizard icon to launch the Booth Combination Wizard.
- 3. Click Next to continue.
- 4. Enter XYZ Expo Floorplan in the Floorplan field and click Next.
- 5. Select Break apart a booth record to create smaller booths and click Next.
- 6. Place a check mark in the Selected box for the Booth1 booth and click Next.

- 7. Allocate the available Units and Length among the five records.
 - Create two 2-unit booths with one 1-unit booth in the middle. (as shown in Figure 21.13).

BoothCombinationWizard							
Ptify™ BOOTH COMBINATION	Confirm B The booth registrants, booths that of the boot The grid di Click Finish	ooth Break and maximu were previu ns in the grid splays the d to complete	Up arm number pusly combin l ata for thes e the proces	eparate the r of complime ned into Boo e fields as th s.	number of units, maxi ntary registrants field th 1. You should set ey will appear after th	mum number of s for all of the the values for all ne break up.	
	ID	Units	Width	Length	Max. Registrants	Comp. Registrants	
Rerdner publications inc.	1	2	10	20	0	0	
	2	0	0	0	0	0	
	3	1	10	10	0	0	
	4	2	10	20	0	0	
	5	0	0	0	0	0	_
Wizard	5 Items						
		<u>C</u> anc	el	<u>B</u> ack	Next		<u> </u>

- 8. Click Finish.
- 9. Select No when asked if you want to break up additional booths.
- 10. Save and Close the Floorplans record
- 11. The **Floorplans** record should now display beneath the **Floorplans** tab of the **Expos** record.



Linking Meetings to Expos

An Expo product may be linked to one or more meetings. An organization that sells booth space to an event frequently sells attendance for the same event.

In addition to defining the link between the Expo and Meeting products, you can also track Expo Registrants who are staffing a particular booth. Aptify allows the user to specify if a meeting registrant is an exhibitor, and if so, which booth he/she will be staffing.

- 1. Open the Meetings tab of the Expos record.
- 2. Open a New Meetings Record.
- 3. Enter XYZ Management Conference in the Name field (where XYZ are your initials).
- 4. Enter Meetings in the Category field.
- 5. Click the **Prices** tab.
- 6. Add a Member Price of \$1000.
- 7. Add a default Non-Member Price of \$2000.
- 8. Click the Meetings tab.
- 9. Enter XYZ Management Conference in the Meeting Title field.
- 10. Enter the Dates for the meeting that match the original Expo record.
- 11. Leave the Status set to Planned (the default setting).
- 12. Enter your Employee in the Coordinator field.
- 13. Enter XYZ Expo in the Linked Expo field.

📄 XYZ Ma	anagement Cor	nference (IC): 9925))	×	
88	🗎 🕙	C	.	More 🔻	
Nam	e XYZ Manageme	nt Conference			
Categor	Meetings				Q 🔳
Тур	Meeting				\sim
Parent Produc	ct				Q 🕂
Meeting -					
General 🗸					
Meeting Title	XYZ Management	Conference			
Start Date	12/26/2016	\sim	End Date	12/30/2016	\sim
Status	Planned			CLOSE M	EETING
Meeting Type					Q 🗄
Coordinator	Adam Smith				् 📋
Linked Expo	XYZ Expo				् 🔳
Meeting Conflict	No Conflict Valida	tion			\sim
Max Reg.	0		Avail. Space	0	
Description					

- 14. Click Save and Close.
- 15. The XYZ Management Conference displays under the Expos Meeting Tab.
 - Users may have to click the **refresh** button to display.

📄 XYZ Expo (ID: 9924) 🗙							
88	B 🕄	C	4	More 🕶			
Name	XYZ Expo						
Category	Exhibits				Q	Î	
Туре	Ехро					\sim	
Parent Product	t				Q	Ð	
Expo 🕶							
Meetings Records Linked To This Record							
	8	C	Q.	More 🕶			
D ID	ME	ETINGID		PRODUCT		START DATE	
40	40			XYZ Management Conference		12/26/2016	

Taking an Order for a Booth

A user reserves a specific Expo booth by placing an order for that booth. Aptify limits the selection of the booth to those that are available within one of the floorplans linked to the Expo product. The system will not allow the user to assign a booth that has already been assigned to another customer or one that has been merged into another booth. In addition, the system will validate that the user has purchased enough units.

- 1. Open a new order.
- 2. Enter your **Persons** record in the **Ship To** field.
- 3. Create an order line for 1 unit of XYZ Expo 20XX.
- 4. Click the Add button.
- 5. The Order Line, Expos tab should automatically display.
 - This occurs IF the Expo Product's Order Line Details are set up to automatically display under the Products, Details tab
- 6. Click the **Booths** tab.
- 7. Select XYZ Floorplan from the Floorplan drop-down menu if not the default floorplan.
- 8. Enter XYZ Booth1 in the Booth fields.

Order Lines record					8
Expo 🗸					
Booths -					
Floorplan	XYZ Floorplan			~	
Booth	XYZ Booth101		۹ 🗊	Configure	
Booth Name	XYZ Booth101				
Weight Required	0				
Configuration Type				\checkmark	
Booth Options					
Needs	Electric	🔤 ls De	ecorated		
Needs	Water	Nee	ds Gas		
Needs	Compressed Air	Nee	ds Drain		
s Units	1	Surch	arge \$0	.00	
				ОКСА	NCEL

- 9. Click **OK** to return to the **Order** form.
- 10. Enter your saved Credit Card payment information.
- 11. Click Save and click No when asked if you want to ship the order.
- 12. Add an order line for 1 unit of XYZ Management Conference.
- 13. The Order Line, Meetings, General tab should automatically display.
- 14. Place a check mark in the Is Exhibitor box.
- 15. Select XYZ Booth1 in the Exhibitor Booth field.

Order Lines record				8				
Meeting -								
General 🗸								
Meeting Name	XYZ Management Conference							
Attendee	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners							
Badge Name	Aiesha Baldwin							
Badge Company Name	Danube Partners							
Badge Title	Marketing Senior Director							
Registration Type	Pre-Registration 🗸 🚺 Show Name On List							
Status	Registered 🗸	Cancellation Date		\checkmark				
C	🗸 Is Exhibitor	Exhibitor Booth	XYZ Booth101	~				
			ОК	CANCEL				

- 16. Click **OK** to close the Order Lines record and return to the order.
- 17. Save the order, and click **Yes** when prompted to pay the order in full using the specified credit card information.
- 18. Say Yes when asked if you want to ship the order.
 - The system ships the order and locks down parts of the order to maintain an accurate audit trail.
- 19. Close the order.

- 20. In Quick Search, enter and click on Find Booths view.
- 21. Enter XYZ Booth101 in the Name prompt.
- 22. Double-click the XYZ Booth101 entry to open the corresponding Booths record.
 - Notice that the order information now appears on the Booths record.

		H,	Î	Ð	G	4	More 🕶
Gene	ral v						
	Name	XYZ Boo	oth101				
Des	cription						
FI	oorplan	XYZ Flo	orplan				Q 🏢
	XCoord	5			YCoord	75	
	Width	10			Length	10	
#	of Units	1			Area	100	
Booth	Registra	nt Inform	nation				
Maximum # 3 Complimentary 3							
Surcharge Flat Amount 🗸 Surcharge Amount \$0.00 Merged							
Merged Into Booth							
Order Information							
Linked Order 10163							
Linked Person Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners							
Linked Company Danube Partners							

23. Close all open records.

Canceling an Expo Order

In this exercise, you will run the Order Cancellation wizard from an Orders view to cancel the Meeting and Expo you ordered in Exercise 10.

- 1. Open an **Orders** view.
- 2. Click the Order Cancellation Wizard icon to launch the wizard.
- 3. Click Next to continue.
- 4. Enter the ID of the Order you created in Exercise 10 in the Order field and click Next.
- 5. Place a check mark in the box for both the Expo and the Meeting and click Next.

Artify Order Cancellation	n Wizard			
Aptify"	Step 2: Sp Please spe To see ord	pecify Order Lines ecify one or more lines to cancel. Also, ind der line details, click in the Product column.	cate the quantity (which should be cancelled. heck All Check None
_	Line	Product	Quantity	Cancel Quantity
ADDED	✓ 1	JMS Expo 2007	2.0000	2.0000
UNDEN	2	JMS Management Conference	1.0000	1.0000
		lude Cancellation Fee Product		
-		Product		-
Wizard		Fee		
		Cancel <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext		Einish

- 6. Select the Keep On Account option and click Next to continue.
- 7. Click Finish to create the cancellation order.
- 8. Click Yes to open the order after the cancellation order has been created.
- 9. Change the Order Status to Shipped and click Yes when asked if all items have shipped.
- 10. Close the order.
- 11. Click No when asked if you want to process another cancellation (this closes the wizard).
- 12. Open the XYZ Expo Floorplan from the Floorplans service.
- 13. Click the **Booths** tab.
 - Notice that the **IsOccupied** field is now set to **False** for *XYZ* Booth1.
- 14. Double-click the XYZ Booth1 entry to open the corresponding Booths record.
 - Notice that the order information has been removed from the Booths record.

Expos
General 👻				
Name	XYZ Booth101			
Description				
Floorplan	XYZ Floorplan			् 📋
XCoord	15	YCoord	75	
Width	10	Length	10	
# of Units	1	Area	100	
Booth Registra	ant Information			
Maximum #	0	Complin	mentary 0	
Surcharge	Flat Amount 🗸 Surc	harge Amour	nt \$0.00	Merged
Merged Into	Booth			
- Order Informat	tion Occupied			
Linke	ed Order			
Linked	l Person			
Linked C	ompany			ノー

15. Close all open records.

Using the Floorplan Copy Wizard

You can use the Floorplan Copy wizard to create a copy of an existing floorplan (for example, if you have previously held an expo in this venue, you can save time by copying an existing floorplan and its booths and then make modifications as necessary).

- 1. Create a view of the Floorplans service using *XYZ* Floorplans as the Name and add the following filter:
 - Service: Floorplans
 - Field: Name
 - **Operator:** Contains
 - Value: *XYZ* (your initials)
- 2. Click the Floorplan Copy Wizard icon in the View toolbar to launch the wizard.

ال ا ال	Floor E Corp	olans - JMS Floorpla 🗙 🖆 🛍 🙀 Ians - JMS Flo	ans 💶 🖾 🗐
	ID	Name	Description
	1	JMS Expo Floorplan	
	2	A Second Floorplan	Description for JMS Expo Floorplan
•			2 records

- 3. Click Next.
- 4. Enter XYZ Expo Floorplan in the Floorplan field and click Next.
- 5. Select all booths to copy and click Next.
- 6. Enter XYZ Expo 20XX Production Floorplan in the Name field.



- 7. Click Next and allow the system to generate the booth records.
- 8. Click the **Display** option to view the new Floorplans record.
- 9. Click the **Booths** tab and confirm that the wizard copied the booth configurations from the *XYZ* Expo Floorplan.
- 10. Close all open records and wizards.

Appendix



Publication Functions

Objective

Users will be able to:

- Alter the Delivery schedule of a subscription publication.
- Understand the Fulfillments function.
- Add Publication contributors to a product record.

Altering the Delivery Schedule

You can change the delivery schedule for a subscription so that a recipient can receive their subscription while on vacation or at another office location.

- 1. From a Subscriptions record, select the **Delivery Schedule** tab.
- 2. Click the New button to open a new Subscription Delivery Schedule record.
- 3. Enter a date one month from today in the Start Date field.
- 4. Enter a date two months from today in the End Date field.
- 5. Enter an alternate address and contact information in the fields provided.
- 6. Enter your **Persons ID** in the **Requested By** field.
- 7. Enter Hard Shipment in the Distribution Type field.

Subscription Delive	ry Schedule record
Start Date	02/01/2016 End Date 03/31/2016 Address Image: Comparison of the second sec
Line 1	
Line 2	
Line 3	
City, State ZIP	
County	
Country	United States States Bad Address
	Phone v 1 x
Email	
Requested By	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners
Distribution Type	Hard Shipment
	OK AND NEW OK CANCEL

- 8. Click OK.
- 9. Click Save.
 - At the time of fulfillment, Aptify will look at the date and create the mailing label with the alternate address.

Viewing Subscription Fulfillments

The Subscription Fulfillments service enables you to track the distribution of a subscription's issue, specifying the distribution date, volume, and the recipients. In addition, by processing a subscription fulfillment, mailing labels are automatically generated.

Fulfillment means to send out an issue. A fulfillment is made for all issues sent this month.

Creating the fulfillment generates a mailing label for magazines and decreases a subscription count by one. Subscription Fulfillment is done monthly for each subscription product.

After you run a fulfillment, observe the Output, Mailing Labels to see how the mailing labels will look. You can also go back to the delivery log to observe how an entry is made after fulfillment. You will not be able to use the Output field during fulfillment if you did not make the Delivery Type "Hard Shipment".

- 1. From the Subscription Management application, click to open the Subscription Fulfillments service and open a New Subscription Fulfillments Record.
- 2. Select XYZ Subscription from the Product drop-down menu.
- 3. Enter next month's date in the Name field.
 - For example, if the current month is January 20XX, you would enter **February** of the same year in the Name field.
- 4. Enter today's date in the **Distribution Date** field.
 - The **Date Prepared** field defaults to today's date.
- 5. Enter 1 in the Volume field.
- 6. Enter 1 in the Issue field.
- 7. Verify that the Use Vol. and Issue Number option is selected (the default setting).

Product	Corporate Membership		~	
Name	February 2017			
Distribution Date	02/01/2017	\sim		
Date Prepared	01/14/2016 10:35:27 AM	\sim		
Volume	1			
Issue	1			
Recipients -				
Create Recipient List Use Subscription End D Use Vol. and Issue Nun CREATE LIST)ates nber			

- 8. Click the Create List button.
 - A dialog box appears that informs which people qualified for this distribution.

Subscript	ion Fulfillment
?	There are 3 subscribers that qualify for this distribution. Click OK to add these subscribers to the recipient list.
	Cancel

- 9. Click OK.
 - The record is saved automatically and an ID number is assigned.
 - The qualified recipients appear under the Recipient tab. You should see the following information if you completed the earlier exercises in this lab:
 - 1 issue was sent to your **Person**, leaving 11 remaining.
 - 3 copies of the item were sent to your **Person**, who had a bulk subscription.
 - 1 issue was sent to your **Person**, leaving 5 remaining (since you canceled half of the original order in an earlier exercise).

1	nt Recipients 🔛 Output 🎑 Comments 🛛 Attachments									
	Create Recipient List									
	 Use Subscription End Dates Use Vol. and Issue Number Create List 									
			Recipient			Subscrip	otion			
		Name	Company	Distributed By	Start Date	End Date	Sent	Left	Bulk	
	٣	James Cross	The Ohio State	Hard Shipment	02/11/200	02/10/20	1	5	1	
		John Jensen	Spécialités du	Hard Shipment	02/11/200	02/10/20	1	11	1	
		Ian Miller	Kumpulan Gut	Hard Shipment	02/11/200	02/10/20	1	11	3	

10. Click the **Output** tab.

nt Recipients	Output 📝 Comments Attachments	
Email	c:\email.txt	
Fax	c:\fax.txt	
Copy To Clipboard		
Mailing Labels		

11. Click the **Mailing Labels** button. (This option is applicable for hard shipment subscription products.)

- This opens the Report wizard for the Subscription Fulfillment service, which includes a standard subscription fulfillment label report. This report displays the address for each recipient so they can be printed to mailing labels.
- Within the Report wizard, click the Labels tab.
- Select the Subscription Fulfillment Label Report and click Next.
- Click Finish to display the mailing labels for the recipients.



- 12. Close the Subscription Fulfillment Label Report window.
- 13. Save and close the Subscription Fulfillments record.

Creating a New Contributors Record

- 1. On XYZ Product record, select the Publications tab.
- 2. Select the General > Publication Contributors sub-tab.

📄 XYZ Pro	duct (ID: 9922)) ×		
88	B 49	C	More 🕶	
Name	XYZ Product			
Category	Books/Publicatio	ons		Q 🔳
Туре	Publication			\sim
Parent Product				Q 🗄
Publication -				
General 👻				
Publisher				Q 🗄
Date Written	~			
Date Copyright	~			
Date Published	~			
ISBN/ISSN				

- 3. Click the New button to open a new Publication Contributors record.
- 4. In the Person field, enter your Person.
- 5. From the Role drop-down menu, select Editor.
- 6. Leave Commission Type set to Flat Amount.
- 7. In the Commission field, enter \$100.00.
- 8. Leave **Primary In Role** selected (person is primary editor of the publication).

Publication Contr	ibutors record	8
Person	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners	, ∎
Role	Editor	\sim
Commission Type	Flat Amount	\sim
Commission	\$100.00	
	V Primary In Role	
Comments		
	OK AND NEW OK	CANCEL

- 9. Click OK.
 - The contributor's record is added to the Publication Contributors tab.

📄 XYZ Proc	luct (ID: 9922) 🗙		
8	🗎 🕙 C 🔒	More 👻	
Name	XYZ Product		
Category	Books/Publications		Q 📋
Туре	Publication		\sim
Parent Product			Q 🗄
Publication -			
Publication Co	ntributors -		
NEW EDIT DE	LETE 7 🛨 🛨		
	PERSON	ROLE	
	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners	Editor	

- 10. Click the **Publication > Prices** tab and add prices for the product.
- 11. Save and Close the record.

Appendix



SQL Value Statements for Views

Objective

Users will be able to:

• Insert SQL Statements into View Filter Value fields to create links to Dates and Employee IDs

Overview

Following Page contains the filter values that can be inserted for

- Dates
- Employee IDs
- Sounds-Like
- LastName = '<PROMPT....>'
- Becomes
- SOUNDEX(LastName) = SOUNDEX('<PROMPT.....>')
- This allows you to do "sounds like" instead of begins with / exactly matches, etc.ValueOperator
- UsedResults
- Prompted Proximity

EMPLOYEE_NAME (Operator = Exactly Matches) - Returns the records associated with the current user's employee name. This will return a blank value if the user does not have an associated employee record.

EMPLOYEE_ID - Returns the records associated with the current user's Employee ID. This will return a blank value it the user does not have an associated employee record.

SUSER_NAME or

SUSER_NAME() or

CURRENT_USER or

SUSER_SNAME or

USER

Use Exactly Matches as the Operator to Return the records associated with the current user's SQL user name.

TODAY or

GET DATE or

NOW + or - number of days Returns today's date plus or minus the number of days following

Appendix

G



User Profiles

Setting Up User Profiles

Aptify users are added to the database by using the Aptify User Administration Wizard. As a step in user creation (step 6 of the Wizard) each New Aptify client administrator should copy the **Baseline** profile. Once copied, the Baseline profile can then be modified as a second, renamed profile (such as Customer Service Representative). Subsequent users with that same function should copy the new (e.g. Customer Service Representative) profile.

By copying a profile, an administrator, through the Aptify User Administration Wizard causes the new user to inherit the previous profile's **metadata**. That metadata is composed of specific **Dashboards**, **Views**, personal **Navigation** settings, **Application** and **Services** displayed, and **Group Security** settings. Each new profile an administrator creates should be built by adjusting the Baseline User's, copied profile. This effectively means the administrator mus login as the new profile, adjust it's metadata to reflect a specific department or function, log out, and disconnect the license. A disconnected license does NOT disable the profile - it simply makes the license available for future allocation to a new user.

By carefully setting up these profiles from the Baseline profile, administrators significantly jump start the Go-Live capabilities of their end users. Those users now have focused Views, Shortcuts, and Dashboards and other metadata that reflect their department/functions needs.

It is VERY important to note that by using the Baseline profile as the starting template, Administrators avoid copying and proliferating unnecessary views. The Baseline profile's views are connected to the **Baseline Administrator's** owned views via Shared Folders. By copying the Baseline profile and using it as a template, the Administrator does NOT copy the views, only the Shared Folder connections. Since the Baseline profile owns NO views, there is no increase in the total number of views in the database.

The setup and copying of the Baseline profile is an Administrator function, but it is critical that each department review the major metadata components that should be specifically configured for them via a profile: **Dashboards**, **Views**, personal **Navigation** settings, **Application** and **Services** displayed, and **Group Security**. After reviewing, the end users can then contribute, through a series of meetings, what components need to be added.

Post Go-Live: An organization's department leaders should meet regularly to review which views, shortcuts, and dashboards and other metadata should be included in a profile, and work with administrators to update the profile as necessary so that new users are able to begin working with Aptify more easily.

IMPORTANT: The specific copying/setup of profiles, shared folders, and the use of the Baseline and Baseline Administrator profiles is covered in the Administrator class.